westermann

Annotations | Background Information | Commentary
for

Dave Eggers

The Circle

ISBN 978-3-425-73072-1

compiled by Rudolph F. Rau

Table of Contents

Introduction	**Page 3**
Biography	**Page 3**
For Further Reading	**Page 4**
Annotations and Commentary:	
Book I	**Page 5**
Book II	**Page 55**
Book III	**Page 82**

© Westermann

Introduction

The Circle, in the tradition of dystopian literature, posits a fearful future in which a conglomerate of a search machine and a social media company – a kind of combination of Google, Facebook, Twitter, and even Amazon – becomes the dominant force in society, intruding itself into its every corner, even the political system. Will the protagonist in the novel be able to push back against this development or will society succumb to the seeming attractiveness of this conglomerate and give up its individuality and privacy? The novel couldn't be more topical if we think about how social media has been misused and abused to spread fake news and inane conspiracy theories. And if we consider how cookies are used to accumulate information about consumers for the pursuit of greater profits.

And what has happened in the EU? New laws have been passed to constrain the overreaching influence of high tech to protect the privacy of its citizens and to give smaller companies a fighting chance. These laws include the European privacy law of 2018 and more recently the Digital Markets Act, which prevents tech platforms from using their interlocking services to collect data from different services to target users with ads without their consent. The USA is expected to follow suit.

In the latest development, workers for an Amazon.com warehouse in Staten Island, New York (April 2022) have voted to unionize – against the wishes of Amazon owner, Jeff Bezos. Bezos is also the owner of the *Washington Post.* Amazon has been criticized for its unfair business practices, overreaching political influence, and poor working conditions. Dave Eggers, himself, is very critical of Amazon.

Biography

Dave Eggers, (1970 –) is an American author, publisher, and philanthropist. His memoir **A Heartbreaking Work of Staggering Genius** (2000) established his reputation as a successful author appealing to a wide audience. The memoir deals with the tragedy of both his parents dying when he was 21 and how he took on the responsibility of raising his younger brother. It was nominated for the Pulitzer Prize. A number of successful fiction and nonfiction works followed, including children's books. He founded the publishing house McSweeney's in 1998 in order to provide more opportunities for young writers to publish.

Eggers grew up in Boston and in Illinois and studied at the University of Illinois. The author is married to Vendela Vida, also a writer. They have two children.

The Circle (2013) deals with the pernicious influence that a technology conglomerate – a kind of Facebook combined with Google – can have on society. A film version was made in 2017 and a sequel, **The Every**, was published in 2021.

© Westermann

For Further Reading

Brave New World by Aldous Huxley (1932) – a dystopia in which there is no freedom of choice, and almost everyone is happy in a world of constant surveillance.

1984 by George Orwell (1949) – the novel describes a repressive, totalitarian world with mass surveillance ("Big Brother is watching you."). It is modelled on Stalinist Russia and Nazi Germany.

The Age of Surveillance Capitalism: The Fight for a Human Future at the New Frontier of Power is a 2019 nonfiction book by Shoshana Zuboff. The book examines the development of digital companies such as Google and Amazon that have become increasingly intrusive with maximum profit as the motive.

The Paradox of Choice – Why More Is Less by Barry Schwartz (2004) – Schwartz maintains that the enormous number of consumer choices has become a serious psychological problem.

The Accidental Billionaires by Ben Mezrich (2010) – a narrative about how Facebook was founded.

A film version of **The Circle** with Emma Watson and Tom Hanks was made in 2017.

Point to Ponder: Before you start reading the novel, comment on the John Steinbeck quote from **East of Eden**:
"There wasn't any limit at all, to the future. And it would be so a man wouldn't have room to store his happiness."

© Westermann

Annotations and Commentary by Rudolph F. Rau

for

Dave Eggers: The Circle

ISBN 978-3-425-73072-1

Page 1

• **2 campus** grounds and buildings of a university, college, large firm, etc. • **vast** very great in size • **rambling** spreading in various directions in an unorganized manner • **wild with Pacific color** with colourful vegetation that reflects the coastal climate along the Pacific Ocean • **4 shipyard** place where ships are built and repaired • **5 blight** (here:) area of land that has been completely neglected for a long time • **6 Calatrava** as typical of Calatrava la Vieja, a medieval site in Spain originally built by Muslims • **7 clay** with a clay (*Ton*) surface • **9 to squeal** *kreischen* • **to weave, wove, woven** (here:) to move about constantly changing direction • **amid s.th.** (formal) in the middle of s.th. • **10 acre** [ˈeɪkər] One acre is about 4,050 square metres. • **brushed steel** polished steel, but not shiny • **12 spotless** (fig.) without any clouds, empty • **16 cobblestone** naturally rounded stone used to make the surface of a road or path • **tile** *Fliese* • **imploring** asking earnestly

Page 2

• **1 to innovate** to make changes by introducing new ideas • **2 jumpsuit** clothing consisting of a shirt and trousers sewn together • **5 to etch** [etʃ] to produce a design or pattern on a hard material by cutting into the material's surface with acid or a laser beam • **7 knitted** [ˈnɪtɪd] (fig.) appearing to be knitted (*stricken*) together • **grid** pattern of lines crossing each other • **11/12 four years running** for a period of four years, one after the other • **16 habitable** liveable • **bond** close relationship • **17 sibling** brother or sister • **19 jaw** *Kiefer* • **twilight** time shortly after sunset • **to faint** *in Ohnmacht fallen* • **20 flu-ridden** with a bad case of the flu *(Grippe)* • **finals** final exams • **21 7-Eleven** (USA) chain of small supermarkets that is open in the evening • **caffeine** [ˈkæfiːn] (here:) tablets that keep you awake • **23 to wire** (here:) to join broken bones with a wire • **25 straw** *Trinkhelm* • **fierce** (here:) very strong • **commitment** *Engagement* • **28 Carleton** liberal arts college in Minnesota • **to meander between majors** (fig.) to constantly change from one major (*Hauptfach*) to another

Page 3

• **2 psych** (coll.) psychology • **2/3 to graduate** to complete your studies with a degree • **3 MBA** master of business administration • **Stanford** prestigious private university in California • **to recruit s.o**. [rɪˈkruːt] to offer employment to s.o., especially s.o. who has just graduated • **5 lofty** impressive • **7 to pull strings for s.o**. (fig.) to use your connections to help s.o. • **8 indebted** [ɪnˈdetɪd] grateful • **beyond all measure** (fig.) extremely • **10 atrium** [ˈeɪtriəm] large, high space with a glass roof in the centre of a building • **shot through with** (fig.) flooded with • **14 briefly** for a short time • **dizzy** *schwindlig* • **15 immaculate** *makellos* • **glossy** shiny • **19 to float above** (fig.) to seem suspended above • **scarlet** bright red • **23 digital droplet** (fig.) a short sound produced digitally • **25 retinal interface** a computer connection in the retina (*Netzhaut*) • **to assume** to suppose • **26 innovation** (here:) invention

Page 4

• **1 hardtack** hard, saltless biscuit: in earlier times a main source of food for sailors • **sturdy** robust • **5 corporate** like a big business • **to beat, beat, beaten s.th.** (here:) to be much better than s.th. else • **6 public utility** state or city-owned company that supplies gas, water, or electricity to the public • **7 stupefied** astonished • **to give, gave, given notice** *kündigen* • **8/9 good riddance** (coll.) phrase used to express relief that s.th./s.o. is no longer a part of your life • **9 gulag** -(fig.) network of labor camps during the time of the Soviet Union • **11 to be tied up with s.th.** (idiom) to still be busy with s.th. • **12 radiant** [ˈreɪdiənt] (here:) beaming • **14 to thrill at s.th**. to become excited about s.th. •**15/16 voicemail** recorded telephone message • **17 to choke up** (fig.) to be unable to speak properly because of a strong emotion • **18 to be gainfully employed** (fig.) to have a job with a regular income • **20 burden** *Last* • **22 dappled light** marked with small spots of light • **23 clear** (here:) with nothing on it • **25 oxidized copper** *Grünspan* • **27 to nod, nodded, nodded** to move your head up and down to mean "yes"

© Westermann

Page 5

• **1 angular** with sharp, outside corners • **gym** (abbreviation) gymnasium: *Turnhalle* • **2 crossfit** CrossFit™: a fitness scheme • **Pilates**™ a fitness scheme with special equipment • **3 spinning** (here:) indoor cycling • **bocce** [ˈbɑːtʃiː] game of Italian origin similar to lawn bowling • **4 tetherball** ball attached to a pole with a string • **setup** pole and surrounding area where the game of tetherball can be played • **5 lush** growing vigorously • **green** lawn • 6 **splayed about** (fig.) spread out • **8 Alexander Calder** (1898-1976) American sculptor famous for his mobiles (moving sculptures) • **17 tinted faintly orange** with a barely visible orange colour • **19 high school yearbook** book published annually by a high school with pictures of the graduating class, pictures of teachers, a description of important events, etc. • **20 gasp** quick, deep breath • **21 absence** not being present or available • **22 to assault** to attack • **24 high cheekbones** *hohe Wangenknochen* • **25 severity** [sɪˈverəti] (here:) a strict or stern appearance • **28 myriad** [ˈmɪriəd] a great variety

Page 6

• **2 document** i.e. the yearbook • **3 to rattle s.o.** to upset s.o. very much • **6 ID** anything that proves your identity • **7 tight** (coll.) close friends • **10 featured** (here:) especially organized • **11 panel** (here:) video screen • **13 screening** act of showing a movie • **Koyaanisqatsi**, also known as **Life Out of Balance:** a 1982 American experimental film that only includes music and visual material of cities and natural landscapes. There is neither a narration nor a dialogue. • **14 core strengthening** psychological and physical strengthening of the inner self • **congressman** elected member of the US House of Representatives • **15 to hold a town hall** to organize a meeting whereby voters can question an elected politician or a candidate for office • **17 to ripple** to move in very small waves • **shirtsleeve** *Hemdsärmel* • **18 earnest** very serious • **fist** *Faust* • **19 to split** to divide in half • **20 catwalk** narrow walkway • **21 grating** flat frame with bars across it to cover a hole or window • **to cinch** [sɪntʃ] (here:) to become tighter • **23 levity** trying to be less serious and more light-hearted • **vertigo** dizziness when confronted with great heights • **25 gravely** (here:) very much • **concerned** worried

Page 7

• **7 to recover** to return to a normal state after an unpleasant experience • **10 to bisect** to cut into two equal parts • **11 occupant** [ˈɑːkəpənt] person living or working in a particular place • **12 elaborately** in a complicated and detailed manner • **13 paraphernalia** [ˌpærəfərˈneɪliə] miscellaneous equipment • **airborne** up in the air • **14 exposed** (here:) open to view • **beam** *Balken* • **arrayed with things** with items arranged in a pleasing manner • **bonsai** [ˈbɑːnsaɪ] **tree** miniature tree grown in a pot • **15 cutlery** knives, forks, and spoons • **16 in a tidy grid** i.e. placed up and down, side by side in a tidy manner • **17 hand-blown** made by a glass-blower • **chandelier** [ˌʃændəˈlɪr] *Kronleuchter* • **aglow** [əˈgloʊ] shining • **bulb** *Glühbirne* • **18 peach** pinkish-orange • **20 cubicle** small enclosure with walls in an office • **lined** covered • **linen** [ˈlɪnɪn] *Leinen* • **21 to falter** (here:) to stop beating properly because of shock • **24 to bear, bore, borne resemblance to s.th.** (fig.) to seem similar to s.th. • **25 burlap** heavy material used for wrapping crates or for sacks • **27 to betray** (fig.) *verraten*

Page 8

• **1 to dart** to move about rapidly • **2 to indicate** to show • **5 to get acquainted with s.th./s.o.** to get to know s.th./s.o. • **7 to get s.o. set up** to get s.o. started • **8 to twist** to form into an unusual shape • **12 baffled** totally confused • **13 abyss** (fig.) [əˈbɪs] bottomless hole • **15 utility company** private or public company that supplies the public with gas, water, or electricity • **17 inclined** *geneigt* • **20 to loathe** [loʊð] **s.th./s.o.** to hate or thoroughly dislike s.th./s.o. • **to curse** *verfluchen* • **21 to subject s.o. to s.th.** to force s.o. to experience s.th. unpleasant • **limitation** a limit to what can be done • **22 scarcity** quality of occurring very seldom • **diversion** activity that makes time pass by pleasantly, entertainment • **enlightened** well-informed, open-minded • **23 Longfield** fictional name • **24 tenderness** fondness • **Fresno** city in the centre of California • **24/25 Tranquillity** small town near Fresno – "tranquillity" means peace and quietness. • **25 to incorporate** to legally establish a town with town limits • **literal-minded** (here:) deciding on the name of the town on the basis of what the farmer thought his land ought to be • **26 to peak** (fig.) to reach the maximum number

© Westermann

Page 9

• **4 graduating class** the class that has completed high school • **eighty-one** i.e. 1981 • **6 to go, went, gone into debt** [det] *Schulden machen* • **7 utility** i.e. utility company • **to shred s.o.** (here:) to make s.o. feel a complete failure • **9 to pay down** to pay off • **loan** money borrowed from a bank • **11 slit** narrow opening • **12 cinderblock** *Schlackenstein* • **13 locker room** *Umkleideraum* • **15 to marvel at s.th.** to greatly admire s.th., to think t.th. is wonderful • **17 Black Lightning** African-American comic book superhero • **wilted** (fig.) not very original • **18 reference** (here:) *Anspielung* • **19 to play your cards right** (fig.) to act carefully to get ahead • **20 IT** information technology • **sub-station** major centre where power lines or pipe lines come together and from where electricity or gas is distributed • **exasperation** irritation • **21 unbounded** without limit • **22 liberal arts** a course of study designed to provide general knowledge • **23 voracious** [vəˈreɪʃəs] (fig.) requiring the repayment of large sums of money • **24 feedings** (fig.) money to pay off the loan • **paycheck** salary in the form of a cheque • **25 greener pastures** (fig.) better opportunities • **26 supervisor** boss • **27 ostensible** supposed • **officer** (here:) person responsible for a certain task • **27 twist** (fig.) unexpected development

Page 10

•**1 splitter** a device at the end of a cable from which two or more cables are connected • **ham radio** *Amateurfunk* • **2 to supervise s.o.** to make sure and check that s.o.'s tasks are properly carried out • **3 button-down** shirt with buttons at the tips of the collar • **4 assault on the senses** (fig.) s.th. awful to see, hear, and smell • **5 furry** like fur (*Pelz*) • **wayward** unmanageable • **paw** *Pfote* • **to emerge** to come out from a hidden place, to appear • **6 ever-flared** always wide open • **nostril** *Nasenloch* • **offenses** (here:) examples of displeasing behaviour and appearance • **8/9 graduate** person who has completed high school or a course of study at a college or university • **11 subpar** below the level of quality that is expected • **13 excruciating** [ɪkˈskruːʃieɪtɪŋ] extremely painful or bad • **14 highway cop** (coll.) state law officer who patrols highways outside of urban areas • **14/15 to pull s.o. over** (police work) to request that a driver stop their car to be questioned by the police • **17 protégée** young person whose career is furthered by a person with experience • **19 to wink at s.o**. *jdm zuwinkern* • **captain** i.e. captain of a ship • **20 first mate** *Erster Offizier* • **raucous** [ˈrɔːkəs] turbulent • **21 to be devoted to s.o.** to be completely loyal to s.o. • **25 favor** *Gefallen* • **26 neediness** (here:) need for help • **pushiness** *Penetranz* • **nudginess** (here:) trying to get s.o. to do you a favour • **27 to breed, bred, bred s.th. into s.o.** to bring up, to raise a child so as to make sure that certain attitudes and manners of behaviour are learned

Page 11

• **3 to bend, bent, bent** (fig.) to form, to shape • **5 actual** (here:) real • **5 water cooler** glass container that contains cool water for office workers to drink from • **5/6 punch card** card with holes in it that is inserted into a device that records when you arrive and leave for work • **6 certificate of merit** official document that acknowledges s.o. having done s.th. well • **7 to deem** (formal) to consider • **12 distillation** (here:) symbol, embodiment • **to facilitate** s.th. to make s.th. easier • **13 lined** (here:) covered • **14 to distract** *ablenken* • **to allude to s.th.** *auf etwas anspielen* • **18 refined** (here:) of superior quality • **bulk** (here:) bought in large quantities • **19 budget** (here:) cheap • **20 to vow** to solemnly promise • **23 general store** *Gemischtwarenladen* • **24 to encounter s.th.** to come across s.th. • **26 musty** smelling of dampness (*Feuchtigkeit*) • **to well up** to become watery • **27 to mumble** *murmeln*

Page 12

• **1 sigh** [saɪ] *Seufzer* • **3/4 to pose** to stand or sit in a certain position • **4 to pout** [paʊt] *einen Schmollmund machen* • **9/10 hands were raised in surrender** to surrender: *sich ergeben* • **10 to put s.o. up to s.th.** (coll.) to convince s.o. to do s.th. bad • **13 Walmart** American chain of discount retail stores • **ages** (coll.) a very long time • **17 to pound** to beat loudly and quickly • **sicko** (coll., AE) s.o. morally or mentally sick • **18 to feign** [feɪn] **s.th.** to pretend s.th. • **awesome** [ˈɔːsəm] inspiring awe: a feeling of great respect or wonder, sometimes combined with fear • **21 follow-through** (coll.) completing a task • **21/22 wink** *Augenzwinkern* • **22 lunatic** crazy person • **25 senior executive** person with an important managerial position

© Westermann

Page 13

• **1 housepants** trousers suitable for wearing at home • **casual** informal • **3 monogamous** [məˈnɑːgəməs] (here:) having only one girlfriend or boyfriend at a time • **doofus** (coll., AE) silly or stupid person • **4 cute** [kjuːt] *niedlich* • **5 dimpled** with a dimple (*Grübchen*) on the chin • **long-lashed** with long eyelashes • **6 effervescent** [ˌefərˈvesnt] full of energy • **8 gangly** (coll.) tall, thin, and awkward • **9 to be given to s.th.** to tend to do s.th. • **tangent** subject that is not relevant to the topic at hand • **10 obsession** s.th. that you are constantly preoccupied with • **cave** *Höhle* • **perfumery** process of making perfume • **doo-wop music** a kind of rhythm and blues music • **11 ex** (coll.) former partner in a relationship • **hookup** (coll.) casual relationship • **13 cause** organization that fights for s.th. • 14 **to be committed to your coursework** to accomplish the tasks for completing a course with great effort • **16 to loosen s.o. up** (coll.) to make s.o. feel comfortable and relaxed • **18 decadently** as if having a decadent lifestyle • **20 booth** place to sit in a restaurant with two long seats facing each other at a table • **diner** [ˈdaɪnər] (AE) small, inexpensive restaurant • **23 countless** very many • **cross-country** cross-country skiing or running contest • **24 partial** not full • **scholarship** *Stipendium* • **26 intermittently** every so often • **27 meet** (here:) contest • **deep** (here:) very anxious to win • **to taunt s.o.** to irritate s.o. by making sarcastic/insulting remarks • **28 SAT** Scholastic Aptitude Test: nationwide test to determine if s.o. is qualified to attend a college or university – Annie is implying that her opponents are stupid as shown by poor SAT scores • **wholly** completely

Page 14

• **1 outcome** final result • **to be along for the ride** (fig.) to participate in s.th. just for the fun of it • **3 bare** not covered by anything • **to riff on s.th.** (coll.) to talk incessantly about s.th. • **5 coach** *Trainer* • **matching** identical • **8 to justify s.th.** *etwas rechtfertigen* • **subsidy** (here:) scholarship • **9 invariably** without exception • **12 scattershot** (coll.) chaotic • **ridiculous** laughable • **15 crucial** [ˈkruːʃl] important • **16 privy to s.th.** having access to s.th. secret • **17 without breaking a sweat** (coll.) without any great effort • **18 to set s.th. up** to arrange s.th. • **to swallow your pride** (fig.) *seinen Stolz überwinden* • **19 to make the ask** (coll.) to ask for a favour • **testament** proof • **20 core** innermost • **destiny** *Schicksal* • **21 garish** [ˈgerɪʃ] tasteless, showy • **24 shepherd** *Schäfer* • **27 lounge** [laʊndʒ] large room with comfortable furniture to relax in

Page 15

• **1/2 Jean-Michel Basquiat** (1960 – 1988) Black American artist whose neo-expressionist paintings have become enormously valuable – his paintings reflect his criticism of racism and colonialism. • **2 near-broke** (coll.) almost bankrupt • **9 eatery** (coll., AE) luncheonette, restaurant • **10 diner** [ˈdaɪnər] person eating a meal somewhere • **11 glance** quick look • **14 hang glider** a large frame like a kite from which a rider hangs and which is used to fly through the air from a cliff or hill • **to loan** (AE) to lend • **15 to champion** (here:) to strongly support, to advocate • **16 display** arrangement of s.th. that is meant to be shown for viewing • **17 jellyfish** *Qualle* • **apparent** obvious • **pattern** regular arrangement • **21 reliably** *zuverlässig* • **22 to hire** (AE) *einstellen* • **23 to keep your head down** (fig.) to keep out of trouble • **24 juicy** (coll., AE) interesting and well-paid

Page 16

• **1 shitty-ass** (vulgar) miserable • **4 to curse** to use vulgar words when angry • **9 kennel** building with cages to keep dogs • **11 to task s.o. with s.th.** (coll.) to give s.o. a task to do s.th. • **12/13 to get acclimated** (AE) to get used to new surroundings – also: to allow wood to adjust to the temperature and moisture in the area where it is to be used **18 analogy** [əˈnælədʒi] *Analogie* • **23 brainchild** product of your imagination • **24 Kinsmann** notice the word "kinsman", meaning "male relative" • **to pass on** (coll.) to die • **28 to embrace s.th.** (here:) to accept and use s.th. with enthusiasm

Page 17

• **2 workout** period of physical exercise • **4 improv** (abbreviation, coll.) improvisation • **7 aging** becoming old • **10 to break, broke, broken s.th.** (here:) to make s.th. slower • **stride** pace • **11 passion** (here:) done with great enthusiasm • **12 exposure** (here:) opportunity to be seen by the public • **given** if you consider • **rough** [rʌf] harsh, difficult • **16 passionately** *leidenschaftlich* • **tilted** bent to one side • **17 to strum** to move your fingers up and down, or across the strings • **feverishly** (fig.) with strong feelings of excitement • **17/18 vast majority** almost total majority • **24 slight** faint, hardly noticeable • **25 lofty** grand, majestic • **26 vestige** [ˈvestɪdʒ] trace • **feudal arrangements** like the rigid class structure of the feudal system during the Middle Ages • **27 vassal** [ˈvæsl] (fig.) man in the Middle Ages given land in exchange for loyalty to the noble owner of the land and for having to stay on the land

© Westermann

Page 18

• **4 world-rocking** (coll.) causing a world-wide change • **5 range** variety • **startling** amazing • **6 submersible** capable of going under water • **craft** (here:) boat, ship • **7 Marianas Trench** the deepest part of the western Pacific Ocean, about 11,000 meters below sea level • **8 to argue** to dispute • **hyperbole** [haɪˈpɜːrbəli] exaggeration • **10 screen** *Schirm* • **embedded into** built into • **to display s.th.** to show, to exhibit s.th. • **14 ochre** [ˈoʊkər] yellow • **15 to commit to that answer** i.e. to give a definite answer • **16 conspiratorial** as if having to do with a conspiracy (*Verschwörung*) • **18 plexiglass,** Plexiglas™ plastic, transparent material used instead of glass • **20 bottom line** the determination of the difference between profit and expenses • **23 revenue** [ˈrevənuː] money coming in • **24 passion** (here:) project that is enthusiastically started up • **sustainable** environmentally friendly • **26 the Wise Men** (humorous) the board of directors – cf. the Three Wise Men mentioned in the Gospel of Mathew; they visit Jesus after his birth. • **26/27 to go nuts for s.th.** (coll., AE) to enthusiastically support s.th. • **27 to enable s.th.** to make it possible for s.th. to develop s.th. • **28 insane** crazy

Page 19

• **2 to appoint** (here:) to provide a room with elegant furnishings • **2 cherry** wood from a cherry tree (*Kirschbaum*) • **walnut** *Nussbaumholz* • **3 to emit** (formal) to give off • **amber** the colour of amber (*Bernstein*) • **4 old school** old-fashioned • **5/6 mahogany** [məˈhɑːgəni] • **6 brass** *Messing* • **stained glass** *Buntglas* • **aesthetic** [esˈθetɪk] theory about what is beautiful • **to overrule** to reject a decision • **7 to check s.th. out** (coll., AE) to examine s.th. closely • **9 hideous** very ugly • **10 awkward** (here:) showing a lack of grace, poorly made • **13 to speak, spoke, spoken** (here:) to reveal • **cartoonishly** (here:) in a manner that is overly simplistic or primitive • **15 nondescript** *unauffällig* • **hoodie** *Kapuzenjacke* • **16/17 tuned into some distant frequency** (fig.) like a radio adjusted to a certain frequency (*Frequenz*) that no-one can find • **17 borderline** not fully developed • **Asperger's** developmental disorder: there are significant difficulties in social interaction and nonverbal communication, and repetitive patterns of behaviour and interests • **18 intent on doing s.th.** having the intention (*Absicht*) of doing s.th. • **to underscore** to emphasize • **19 unkempt** not well cared for • **20 checked out** (coll.) completely disinterested in the world around him • **23 to lay s.th. out** (coll.) to explain s.th. • **27 spiel** (negative, coll.) long speech used again and again to convince s.o. of s.th. • **28 head of state** president, chancellor, or prime minister of a country

Page 20

• **3 awkward** *unbeholfen* • **utter** complete • **4 IPO** initial public offering of a company's stock (*Aktien*) • **6 move** (here:) action • **to assuage s.th.** [əˈsweɪdʒ] (formal) to lessen the intensity of s.th. • **7 ultimately** in the end • **to triple s.th.** to increase s.th. by three times • **valuation** (here:) estimated market value • **8 unprecedented** never having happened before • **10 to float** (here:) to move slowly in the air or water (fig.) • **10/11 successive month** one month after the other • **12 reclusive** withdrawn from society • **15 to reveal s.th. reveal** to show s.th., to make s.th. known • **successive** (here:) new • **18 in the company fold** within an important part of the company • **20 fingerprints** (here:) influence • **knack** [næk] (coll.) special ability • **21 infinitely** without any limitations • **scalable** (here:) adjustable for any market size • **23 acumen** [əˈkjuːmən] ability to judge well, insight • **measurable** (here:) significant • **Niagra** i.e. Niagra Falls • **24 roommate** person who shares a room with you • **26 overwhelming** *überwältigend* • **27 to devise** to plan, to think up • **initial** [ɪˈnɪʃl] first • **28 heretofore** [ˌhɪrtuˈfɔːr] (formal) up until now

Page 21

• **1 sloppy** (here:) chaotic • **3 manifestation** indication • **4 site** website • **purchase** [ˈpɜːrtʃəs] (formal) act of buying s.th. • **5 to run an errand** to go on a short trip to take care of some kind of business, often for s.o. else • **11 devices** i.e. computer, laptop, smartphone, tablet, etc. • **12 unbendable** (here:) cannot be altered • **unmaskable** (fig.) cannot be revealed • **13 to sign up for s.th.** to sign a document to indicate you wish to participate in some kind of activity • **14 to tie to s.th.** to connect with s.th. • **18 ubiquitous** [juːˈbɪkwɪtəs] (formal) being everywhere at the same time • **23 trackable** easy to determine the source or location • **24 operable** able to be used • **via** by means of • **25 retinal** computer connected to the eye • **26 pay site** website with a button you can click on to pay for s.th. • **27 in toto** (Latin) totally • **28 resistant** (here:) refusing to participate • **advocate** *Befürworter, -in*

© Westermann

Page 22

• **1 tidal** [ˈtaɪdl] (fig.) overwhelming • **2 to crush** (here:) to destroy • **2/3 commerce site** website that offers things to buy • **porn** (coll.) pornography • **5 comment board** website where people can express their opinions • **civil** [ˈsɪvl] polite • **poster** person who places a comment on a website • **held accountable** made to show responsibility for s.th. • **troll** [troʊl] person who sends insulting messages on the internet • **8 to track** to follow, monitor • **Valhalla** hall in Norse mythology where slain heroes are received, i.e. a kind of heaven • **10 eminently** (here:) easily • **mappable** can be formed into a chart for analysis • **measurable** *messbar* • **11/12 with surgical precision** (fig.) with great precision • **16 rage** *Wut* • **anonymous hordes** unidentifiable masses of people • **16/17 to put up with s.th.** (coll.) to tolerate • **17 buckshot** (fig.) random • **25 implication** possible consequence • **26 monetization** making money from s.th. • **innovation** new idea

Page 23

• **1 to reap funds** to make a lot of money • **2 to subsume** (formal) to take over • 3 **Alacrity, Zoopa, Jefe, Quan** fictitious names • **6 sharky** (coll.) aggressive • **7 world-striding** travelling around the world • **CEO** chief executive officer: head of a company • **8 Capitalist Prime** (here:) person of great wealth and influence in business • **Transformers** 2007 American science fiction action film about trucks that become robots • **9/10 Little Red Riding Hood** *Rotkäpchen* • **10 temple** *Schläfe* • **11 striped** *mit Streifen* • **11 mold** (here:) particular type, example • **12 eighties Wall Street trader** person who aggressively sought to make a maximum profit by buying and selling stocks on the New York Stock Market during the 1980s – sometimes using dishonest means • **unabashed** without any feeling of shame • **14 titan** (fig.) person of enormous power and wealth, cf. below:

> Bernard L. Madoff (1938 – 2021) is a typical example of the kind of Wall Street investment manager – prevalent in the 1980s during the presidency of Ronald Reagan – who amassed an enormous amount of money by defrauding investors between the 1970s and the early 21st century and used his wealth to lead a life of luxury. Madoff ended up with a 150-year jail sentence.

• **16 to daunt s.o.** *jdn einschüchtern* • **lawsuit** *Klage* • **17 to sponsor** to support • **18 unattainable** not able to be acquired • **19 beyond his pay grade** (fig.) too expensive • **NASCAR** National Association for Stock Car Auto Racing • **yacht** [jɑːt] *Jacht* • **20 anachronism** (here:) a person belonging more to the past and not fitting in with the present • **21 flashy** showy, trying to be impressive • **conflicted** opposing, mixed • **21/22 utopian** [juːˈtoʊpiən] idealistic • **23 conspicuous consumption** spending lots of money on items that are meant to impress • **24 ramshackle** appearing ready to collapse • 26 **assumption** *Annahme* • **28 profoundly** (here:) extremely • **modest** *bescheiden* • **widely accessible** easy to get to

Page 24

• **2 Jackson Hole** ski resort in Wyoming • **2 Millennium Tower** resident skyscraper built in 2009 • **3 Martinique** island in the eastern Caribbean Sea – it is part of France • **5 utterly** completely • **6 superficially** [ˌsuːpərˈfɪʃəli] on the surface • **diametrically** completely • **8 ruddy-faced** with a red, healthy-looking face • **twinkly-eyed** with a humorous look in his eyes • **12 wry** [raɪ] ironically humorous • **13 lyrical** [ˈlɪrɪkl] poetic • **grounded** profound • **turn of phrase** expression • **14 plainspoken** frank, candid • **common sense** *gesunder Menschenverstand* • **15 Omaha** city in the state of Nebraska – not considered a very exciting city in the Middle West • **exceedingly** extremely • **16 Notre Dame** Roman Catholic university in Indiana • **17 Saint Mary's College** four-year, Catholic, residential, women's liberal arts college near Notre Dame University • **down the road** (coll.) nearby • **19 cerebral palsy** brain damage at or after birth that restricts movement • **20 touched** (here:) touched by God • **23 Dixieland** type of early jazz originating in New Orleans • **trombone** *Posaune* • **24 to chuckle about s.th.** to laugh quietly about s.th. • **25 to shrug s.th. off** (fig.) to consider s.th. not to be very important • **FCC** Federal Communications Commission: government agency that regulates the media • **26 to unveil** [ˌʌnˈveɪl] (fig.) to show s.th. to the public for the first time • **feature** (here:) technical innovation • **game-changing** (fig.) causing a dramatic change in further market developments

© Westermann

Page 25

• **1 to stride, strode, stridden** to move along with long steps • **2 term** *Amtszeit* • **Theodore (Teddy) Roosevelt** (1858 • 1919) 26th president of the USA – having a robust and outspoken personality, he initiated a program of progressive reforms such as regulating big businesses and the food and drug industries. • **accessible** *zugänglich* • **genuine** (here:) honest • **3 bouque**t [buˈkeɪ] (fig.) group of flowers arranged in an attractive manner • **4 mismatched** in an unsuitable combination • **6 to emulate** to copy • **Fortune 500** the 500 largest firms in America as determined by the business magazine, *Fortune* • **12 to defy** (here:) to make it impossible to explain • **14 hilarious** [hɪˈleriəs] extremely funny • **15 to veto s.o.** to refuse to allow s.o. to do s.th. • **16 to come across** to make a certain impression • **17/18 connoisseur** [ˌkɑːnəˈsɜːr] expert about art, good food, music, etc. • **18 obsessed with** (here:) very much focused on • **to preserve s.th.** to keep s.th. in its original state • **21 medieval** [ˌmediˈiːvl] having to do with the Middle Ages • **barbarian** *Barbar, -in* • **to keep s.o. at bay** to prevent s.o. from attacking you • **22 gargoyle** [ˈgɑːrgɔɪl]*Wasserspeier* • **knocker** metal object attached to the outside of a door, which is hit against the door to indicate that you wish to enter • **to protrude** to stick out • **23 easy** (here:) easy to understand • **went for** (here:) decided to tell • **gag** joke – the joke is that "knockers" also has the slang meaning of "breasts" • **25 to snort** to breathe noisily through your nose because you are amused or angered by s.th. • **27 holy fuck** (vulgar) amazing

Page 26

• **1 story** *Stockwerk* • **2 to fashion** to construct • **3 muted** (here:) not bright • **easily** (here:) very likely • **4 bound** *gebunden* • **tidily** neatly • **to gleam** to shine • **4/5 lacquer** [ˈlækər] special liquid used on wood to give it a shiny surface • **5 stern** looking serious • **bust** stone model of a person's head, shoulders, and chest • **6 Thomas Jefferson** (1743 -1828) third president of the United States and author of the Declaration of Independence • **Joan of Arc** (1412 - 1431) French national heroine • **MLK**, Martin Luther King, Jr. (1928 - 1968) • **7 Spruce Goose** the Hughes H-4 Hercules built to provide the American armed forces with Atlantic flight transport for use during World War II – it was completed when WWII had already ended. The prototype made only one brief flight on November 2, 1947. • **Enola Gay** name given to the Boeing B-29 Superfortress bomber that dropped the first atomic bomb over Japan on 6 August 1945 towards the end of World War II • **8 antique** [ænˈtiːk] very old • **11 to auction off** *versteigern* • **crusade** (here:) special project that is done with enthusiasm • **12 distressed** (here:) deeply in debt • **estate** large property and its contents • **13 market rates** the market price • **14 access** *Zugang* • **15 grey-hairs** (coll.) old people • **16/17 It'll blow your head off.** (coll.) You will be totally amazed. • **18 flight of stairs** *eine Streppe* • **tiled** *gefliest* • **19 intricate** complex • **20 Byzantine** [ˈbɪzənˌtiːn] **era** time during the Eastern Roman Empire • **rail** *Geländе* • **21 fingerprint** *Fingerabdruck* • **blemish** mark that spoils the appearance of s.th. • **accountant** *Buchhalter* • **22 crisscrossed** crossing each other • **23 beveled** *mit einer Schrägkante* • **25 fevered** (fig.) agitated • **rendering** *Darstellung* • **28 round-spined** with a round spine (*Buchrücken*)

Page 27

• **1 upheaval** rebellion, revolution • **4 non-disclosure agreement** agreement not to make secret or private information known to the public • **9 volume** book • **The Best Years of Our Lives** actually a 1946 film that deals with the problems of WWII soldiers returning home – it is based on the novella, **Glory for Me** • **10 to bear, bore, borne** (here:) to contain, to hold • **11 chamber** large room • **high nerd** (coll.) typical of an eccentric computer fanatic • **13 to line** to cover the inside of s.th. with s.th. • **14 copper** *Kupfer* • **to extend** to reach • 20 **to muster an adjective** to find the appropriate descriptive expression • **24 fireman's pole** In an American fire station, firemen wait for an emergency on the second floor and slide down a pole in a hole in the floor to the fire engines below when there's a fire alarm. • **25 droplet** (here:) short message

Page 28

• **7 wannabe** (negative, coll.) person wishing to be s.o. important and wealthy • **9 revenue** [ˈrevənuː] money earned • **potential** (here:) possibility of earning money • **10 ambassador** (here:) a person who deals with the public • **11 to beware of s.th.** to be very careful about s.th. • **to be into s.th.** (coll.) to be very involved in s.th. • **13 solstice** either the shortest or longest day • **17 level-eyed** (fig.) sensible • **sincerity** honesty • **19 to bow** [baʊ] to bend the top of your body forward as a sign of respect • **22 freckled** *mit Sommersprossen* • **22/23 unblinking** staying constantly open • **25 to savor** [ˈseɪvər] to enjoy s.th. to the full

© Westermann

Page 29

• **1 deference** behaviour showing great respect • **awkward** *peinlich* • **2 eminence** famous and respected person • **3 redundant** more than necessary • **5 lame** *lahm* • **6 to urge s.o. on** to strongly encourage s.o. to do s.th. • **7 blur** s.th. moving too quickly to be perceived properly • **10 any friend of Annie's . . .** The rest of the phrase would be: "is a friend of mine." • **11 dreadlocked** with long thick coils of hair as is typical in Jamaica • **13 admitting** the paperwork needed for new patients • **yard** One yard is about 0.9114 meters. • **15 harvest** *Ernte* • **16 kale** a kind of cabbage (*Kohl*) • **17 grocery store** small supermarket • **19 San Vincenzo** fictitious name • **20 dorm** (coll.) dormitory: *Wohnheim* • **21 to crash** (coll.) to fall asleep suddenly or unexpectedly • **23/24 kitchenette** small kitchen • **25 appeal** attractiveness • **visceral** [ˈvɪsərəl] emotional rather than rational • **28 nap** short period of light sleep

Page 30

• **5 conspirational** as if revealing a secret plan • **7 culinary** [ˈkʌlɪneri] having to do with cooking • **11 pack** (fig.) large group • **12 vendor** person who wants to sell s.th. • **handler** (coll.) person responsible for publicity • **13 arcade** covered passage • **stocked with** supplied with, filled with • **vintage** dating from the past • **pinball machine** *Flipper* • **15 to keep s.o. on retainer** to hire s.o. to be available for a service when needed • **16 to dim** to become less bright • **17 tiki torch** bamboo torch (*Fackel*) • **18 to gather** to come together • **22 developing world** Third World countries • **24/25 to reap funds** (coll.) to make a profit

Page 31

• **1 to shuffle** to walk slowly without lifting the feet • **3 inexplicably** not able to be explained • **to illuminate** to light up • **5 Earth Mother** goddess who represents the earth • **to get into s.th.** (coll.) (here:) to occupy much of your time with s.th. • **8 tanktop** T-shirt without sleeves • **9 lawn** *Rasen* • **11 berm** small, rounded hill • **Riesling** white wine, originally produced in Germany • **12 concoction** [kənˈkɑːkʃn] mixture • **14 to hiss** *zischen* • **to array** to arrange in a certain way • **reveler** person enjoying himself/herself at a party in a noisy way • **15 limbo** West Indian dance where you must lean back and pass under a stick • **kickball** game similar to baseball • **Electric Slide** dance introduced in 1976 • **related** connected to • **16 randomness** lack of any kind of planning • **17 enforced** (here:) required to be carried out • **18 to exceed** to be greater than expected • **blitzed** (coll.) drunk, high • **21 cantaloup** [ˈkæntəloʊp] small, sweet melon with reddish-orange flesh • **bowling pin** *Kegel* • **23 to involve** (here:) to require • **24 overlapping** one partially on top of the other

Page 32

• **4 to refer to s.o.** (here:) to direct your conversation to s.o. • **6 wisp** streak, thin strip • **swiftly** quickly • **10 buffet** [bəˈfeɪ] • **11 in shambles** (fig.) a complete mess • **to raid** to conduct a surprise attack • **14 random** [ˈrændəm] (here:) happening to be present • **17 atop** above • **18 vague** [veɪg] (here:) not having a clear shape • **22 canopy** [ˈkænəpi] (fig.) structure spreading high above like a roof • **24 spear** [spɪr] *Speer* • **25 suede** [sweɪd] soft leather used for shoes or clothing • **27 to crouch** [kraʊtʃ] to lower your body by bending your legs under you

Page 33

• **3 submerged** under the surface of the water • **to retrieve s.th.** to get s.th. back again • **sleek** having an elegant, slender shape • **5 to conclude** to end • **subtly** [ˈsʌtli] hardly noticeable • **7 prominent** sticking out • **crooked** [ˈkrʊkɪd] not straight • **8 bent** *gebogen* • **9 keel** *Kiel* • **dash** long line • **10 princess-pink** (coll.) having a pink colour associated with princesses • **11 to imply** [ɪmˈplaɪ] to suggest indirectly • **18 outskirts** outer edge • **20 to squeal** *quietschen* • **21 sip** small mouthful of liquid • **24 candysweet** (fig.) very sweet • **27 developer** (here:) person who designs and creates new computer programs

Page 34

• **4 no way** (coll.) That's not possible. • **5 I shit you not.** (vulgar) I'm telling you the truth. • **6 garbled** confused, mixed up • **verbal** having to do with words • **7 to utter** (formal) to say • **I fuck you not.** (vulgar) I'm telling you the truth. • **10 deadpan** with a facial expression showing no reaction or emotion • **10/11 conclusive** (here:) definite • **14/15 to turn s.th. around** (here:) to change s.th. • **17 to trust** (here:) to feel certain about s.th. • **17/18 to bring s.th. up** to mention • **20 to acknowledge** to recognize, to accept • **21 frailty** [ˈfreɪlti] weakness • **propensity** [prəˈpensəti] (formal) tendency • **ridiculous** *lächerlich* • **24 toast** *Trinkspruch* • **25 to clink** to cause a ringing sound when glasses hit each other lightly • **27 to swallow** *hinunterschlucken*

© Westermann

Page 35

• **2 scratchy** (here:) rough • **3 seasoned** (fig.) experienced • **soulful** expressing deep feelings • **3/4 Tatum O'Neal** (1963 -) American actress who played in the film *Paper Moon* • **5 Paper Moon** 1973 American film adaptation of a novel of the same name • **8 Addie Pray** In *Paper Moon*, she is the young girl who travels with her father through Kansas and Missouri during the Great Depression of the 1930s. Her father uses all kinds of schemes to trick people into giving him money. • **streetwise** having the skills needed to survive in a dangerous city environment • **8/9 adorable** lovable • **9 tomboy** girl who behaves in a way considered boyish • **11 bowl cut** hair cut short by placing a bowl on the head and cutting along the edges • **13 to slap s.o.** to hit s.o. with the palm of the hand • **14 weird** [wɪrd] strange • **17 to leap, leapt, leapt** to make a large jump • **18 inappropriate** unsuitable • **20 warped** (here:) abnormal • **20 ancient** very old • **23 to lay the blame on s.th./s.o.** to consider s.th./s.o. responsible for s.th. bad • **26 addled** confused • **27 sticky** *klebrig* • **to parse** to analyse

Page 36

• **4 to drop s.th.** (fig.) to no longer continue with s.th. • **10 evidence** proof • **11 to encounter s.o.** (formal) to meet s.o. by chance • **14 species** [ˈspiːʃiːz] animal or plant with a scientific name • **water lily** *Wasserrose* • **15 divine** coming from God • **celestial** [səˈlestʃl] heavenly • **16/17 to happen upon s.th.** to find s.th. by chance • **23 reverie** [ˈrevəri] (formal) daydream • **25 scrum** (BE) crowd of people • **27 shuttle** bus or train that travels back and forth between two stops

Page 37

• **1 to make out** *ausmachen* • **4/5 in the long run** *langfristig* • **6/7 compartment** *Abteil* • **8 to punch s.o.** to strike s.o. with your fist • **13 to glide** *gleiten* • **dull** lacking in sharpness, slow • **15 to harass** *belästigen* • **18 squirrelly** (fig.) as in the manner of a squirrel (*Eichhörchen*) when it hides its nuts: hiding s.th. from view • **20 whoa** [woʊ] (coll.) Just a minute! • **guilty conscience** *schlechtes Gewissen* • **21 to confess** *gestehen* • **25 to drop yourself** to lower yourself • **clumsily** awkwardly, not gracefully • **26 esteemed** highly regarded

Page 38

• **4 to intimidate s.o.** *jdn einschüchtern* • **6 to dodge s.o.** to move quickly to the side to avoid hitting s.o. • **9 awning** *Markise* • **Dark Ages** time between the fall of the Romans Empire and the 10th century • **10 to budge** [bʌdʒ] to move even slightly •**16 Mossad** intelligence agency of Israel

Page 39

• **4 jello shot** Jell-O™ (*Wackelpudding*) mixed with alcohol • **5 wistfully** sadly, thoughtfully • **6 gout** [gaʊt] *Gicht* • **7 futon** [ˈfuːtɑːn] Japanese-style mattress that can be used as a couch or pulled out as a bed • **railroad apartment** (fig.) flat with a series of narrow rooms arranged in a line • **8 flight attendant** steward, stewardess • **10 humble** not luxurious, simple • **desperation** *Verzweiflung* • **13 wretched** [ˈretʃɪd] miserable • **14 to recount s.th.** (here:) to let s.th. go through your mind again • **17 to maintain s.th.** (here:) to continue to hold onto • **18 to careen** (AE) to rapidly move forward in an uncontrolled manner • **19 toddler** child who has just learned to walk

Page 40

• **5 petal** *Blütenblatt* • **3 organic shape** form that imitates a living thing • **occupied** *besetzt* • **8 senior people** people in a higher position • **9 to sweep, swept, swept s.th.** to move s.th. suddenly in a curve • **to indicate s.th.** to point s.th. out • **11 supervisor** person in charge of a department • **14 to furrow your brow** [braʊ] *die Stirn runzeln* • **to think, thought, thought on s.th**. (old-fashioned) to think about s.th. • **notion** idea, concept • **15 strand** *Strähne* • **16 setup** the way everything is organized • **18 feature** special function • **19 ergonomically** in a way designed to make the body comfortable for working • **24/25 to make, made, made your way to s.th./s.o.** to move in a certain direction towards s.th./s.o. • **24 eyeline** movement of the eyes • **25 balding** slowly losing hair on the head • **to extend s.th.** to stretch s.th. out • **28 payroll** (coll.) *Lohnbuchhaltung*

© Westermann

Page 41

• **1 heartily** with enjoyment and enthusiasm • **anew** (formal) again • **2 repartee** [ˌrepɑːrˈtiː] quick, clever, and amusing response • **4 rectangle** *Rechteck* • **to flash** to suddenly shine brightly • **7 full-figured** large breasted • **8 flawless** perfect • **copper** like the colour of copper (*Kupfer*) • **9 notary** *Notar, -in* • **12 consecutive** one after the other • **13 box** small square in a document that is checked or filled • **15 to stain** to leave a mark that is difficult to remove • **17 thumb** [θʌm] *Daumen* • **pad** i.e. ink pad • **20 to arch** [ɑːrtʃ] to form a curved shape • **21 to show up** to appear • **24 zippered** with a zipper (AE) (*Reißverschluss*) • **16/17 birth certificate** *Geburtsurkunde* • **28 to retrieve s.th. from s.th.** (here:) to take s.th. out of s.th. • **to light, lit, lit up** *aufleuchten*

Page 42

• **1 to clap** *klatschen* • **5 beatific-looking** having the appearance of complete happiness • **9 translucent** allowing light to pass through but not transparent • **10 obsidian** [əbˈsɪdiən] dark, shiny volcanic rock • **11 stunned** astounded • **to release** to sell to the public for the first time • **12 predecessor** [ˈpredəsesər] *Vorgänger, -in* • **16 to inscribe** to write or print words onto s.th. • **22 to chuck s.th.** (coll., BE) to throw s.th. away • **trash** (AE) *Abfall* • **23 to pale** to become white in the face • **24 to kid** (coll.) to joke • **26 segue** [ˈsegweɪ] transition without interruption

Page 43

• **1 to grant** to allow, to give • **6 ta-da** comment made when doing a magic trick or when presenting or revealing s.th. • **7 to unveil** [ˌʌnˈveɪl] to reveal • **8 to engrave** *eingravieren* • **13 accessible** *zugänglich* • **14 cloud** (IT) storage space on the internet • **17 to dump s.th.** (coll.) to transfer s.th. • **18 device** *Gerät* • **19 to fry** (coll.) to destroy • **24 no sweat** (coll. AE) *Nicht der Rede wert.* • **25 current** (here:) having the latest update • **26 CE** (abbreviation) Customer Experience, The Circle's customer service department • **given** (here:) in use • **28 crucial** [ˈkruːʃl] extremely important

Page 44

• **1 slip of paper** small piece of paper • **digit** a number between 0 and 9 • **numeral** any symbol that represents a number • **obscure** unknown, strange • **2/3 typographical** having to do with symbols used in printing • **4 deal** (coll.) agreement • **9 invasive species** [ˈspiːʃiːz] (fig.) animal or plant that enters a new environment and spreads quickly at the expense of other local animals or plants • **12 indulgently** in a manner showing tolerance and patience • **I get it** I understand • **14 knuckle** [ˈnʌkl] *Fingerknöchel* • **16 to wrap s.th. around s.th./s.o.** (here:) to put s.th. firmly around s.th./s.o. • **20 to extricate yourself from s.th.** to free yourself from s.th. • **Easy there.** (coll.) Relax! • **22 to quake** to shake • **26 freak** (coll.) strange person

Page 45

• **4 passionately** *leidenschaftlich* • **silver fox** (coll.) attractive older man • **swinger** person who has sex with many different partners • **7 yup** (coll.) yes • **8 to arch** to cause a curve to form • **mischievously** [ˈmɪstʃɪvəsli] *schelmisch* • **9/10 homeroom** classroom where a group of students goes daily • **13 touch** (here:) distinctive detail • **16 moisture** *Feuchtigkeit* • **17 contentment** *Zufriedenheit*

Page 46

• **10 disingenuousness** [ˌdɪsɪnˈdʒenjuəsnəs] quality of not being sincere or honest • **11 to decline** *ablehnen* • **13 unshakably** (here:) firmly • **sincere** honest, not false • **20 roofdeck** roof terrace • **23 bay** [beɪ] *Bucht* • **to take, took, taken s.th. all in** (coll.) to view s.th. for a while with enjoyment • **25 to get s.th. across** (idiom) to explain, to make clear • **26 core** basic • **chief among them** of greatest importance

Page 47

• **2 to foster** *fördern* • **5 pet issue** (fig.) topic you are especially and repeatedly concerned about • **automaton** [ɔːˈtɑːmətə] robot • **4 community first**, cf. below:

Point to Ponder: Consider the slogan of the society depicted in **Brave New World**: "Community, Identity, Stability." and the quote: "Everyone works for everyone else." Compare with the slogan of The Circle (lines 21/22). What other similarities are there to **Brave New World**?

© Westermann

• **6 sweatshop** place where people work for low wages and long hours • **8 dignified** *würdevoll* • **9 stock** *Aktie* • **10 endeavor** [ɪnˈdevər] (formal) attempt to do s.th. • **corny** [ˈkɔːrni] (coll., AE) old-fashioned, overly sentimental • **15 mohair** [ˈmoʊher] (fig.) like the hair of the Angora goat • **16 patch** small area • **21 clarity** [ˈklærəti] clearness • **23 profound** *tiefsinning* • **27 foundation** basis • **28 humane** [hjuːˈmeɪn] showing compassion and sympathy

Page 48

• 1 elemental basic and important • **5 odor** [ˈoʊdər] unpleasant smell • **8 palm** inside of the hand below the fingers • **11 to descend** [dɪˈsend] to go from a higher to lower level • **12 fuzzy-hair** very short hair like fur (*Pelz*) • **14 serene** [səˈriːn] calm and peaceful • **unlined** *ohne Falten* • **15 ample** [ˈæmpl] rather large • **khaki** [ˈkɑːki] yellow brown • **22 cherub** [ˈtʃerəb] small winged child often in paintings and sculptures • **28 set** ready to start

Page 49

• **3 straight-up** (here:) rather uncomplicated • **3/4 customer maintenance** taking care of and advising customers • **5 to route** [ruːt] **to s.o.** to pass on to s.o. • **random** happening by chance • **7 for the sake of continuity** to make sure there is continuity • **8 query** [ˈkwɪri] question, enquiry • **9 core** fundamental, most important part • **11 menu** [ˈmenjuː] (computer) list • **11/12 boilerplate response** (fig.) standard answer • **13 to paste s.th. in** (computer) to insert a text or image in a certain place in a document • **18 entity** [ˈentəti] being, s.th. or s.o. that exists • **to inject s.th. into s.th.** (here:) to add a certain quality to s.th. • **21 scenario** [səˈnærioʊ] situation that is imagined • **21/22 to polish s.th.** (fig.) to improve or refine s.th. • **23 eventuality** s.th. that might possibly happen • **in the event** *falls* • **24 stumped** (coll.): unable to find an answer • **to bounce** (here:) to pass on • **queue** [kjuː] (here:) list of waiting customers • **26 stumper** (coll.) a query that is too difficult to answer • **rep** (coll.) representative • **28 to field** (here:) to answer

Page 50

• **2 survey** [ˈsɜːrveɪ] *Umfrage* • **4 to rate s.th.** *einstufen* • **5 rating** opinion of how good or bad s.th. is according to a particular scale • **to pop up** to suddenly appear • **7 grid of numbers** a set of squares with numbers in them • **11 score** *Ergebnis* • **14 to dip** to go down • **consistently** invariably, always • **16 to slump** to drop, to fall • **20 in the dark** (fig.) having no knowledge of s.th. • **20/21 evaluation** *Bewertung* • **21 nerve-wracking** *nervenaufreibend* • **27 to zing** (coll.) to write a comment ("zing") on the Circle's social media platform, Zing • **frown** *Stirnrunzeln*

Page 51

• **9 snort** loud sound made by forcing air through your nose because of anger or amusement • **10 to adapt s.th.** to alter s.th. to make it fit the situation better • **12 questionnaire** *Fragebogen* • **20 to nag at s.o.** to cause s.o. to worry, to become irritated • **to get to the bottom of s.th.** (fig.) to find out the cause of s.th. • **21 follow-up** (here:) additional questionnaire to the one sent before • **27 to tap s.th.** to touch s.th. lightly with your finger

Page 52

• **2 sensitive to the metrics** careful about how to answer the questionnaire • **7 appropriate** *passend* • **9 taken aback** shocked, surprised • **10 to lose your footing** (fig.) to momentarily not know how to proceed because of being surprised • **11 to regain s.th.** to get s.th. back • **13 intra-office** within the office • **14 feed** (here:) input containing information • **16 to delineate** [dɪˈlɪnieɪt] (formal) to determine • **20 to bounce** (here:) to send • **21 to stop by** *vorbeischauen* • **22 to be in touch with s.o.** (idiom) to communicate with s.o. • **28 to open the chute** (fig.) to open the gate that releases customers' queries • **to release** to let loose • **deluge** [ˈdeljuːdʒ] (fig.) sudden, large flood

Page 53

• **1 inundated** (fig.) overwhelmed • **5 mock-salute** a salute meant as a joke • **7 to sweat** [swet] *schwitzen* • **12 sub-100s** scores below 100 • **14 to adjust s.th.** to change s.th. slightly to make s.th. more correct • **16 aggregate** [ˈægrɪgət] (here:) average

© Westermann

Page 54

• **10 to kick ass** (vulgar, AE) (here:) to act in an aggressive manner • **12 newbie** (coll.) new person with little experience • **15 to forward** *nachsenden* • **17 thread** (internet) series of connected messages • **18 validation** recognition • **21 newb** newbie • **22 suck it** (vulgar) to hell with it • **25 dizzying** (here:) *überwältigend*

Page 55

• **2 to track s.th.** *etwas verfolgen* • **impact** *Wirkung* • **5 Marmaris** tourist resort in turkey • **6 invariably** without exception • **7 legacy** s.th. from the past that still has an effect • **gracious** [ˈgreɪʃəs] (here:) generous • **9 affirmation** approval • **10 demanding** requiring a lot of effort • **11 to settle into s.th.** (here:) to find and maintain • **16 intermittent** occasional • **21 insane** crazy • **22 natural** s.o. with natural talent • **25 to shield s.th.** to cover s.th. for protection • **26 course** (coll.) of course • **27 to jab s.th. at s.o.** to point s.th. roughly or quickly towards s.o.

Page 56

• **1 sturdy** [ˈstɜːrdi] physically strong and healthy • **to squint** to look at s.th./s.o. with the eyes partially closed • **3 to wail** [weɪl] *jammern* • **4 obsessed** constantly focusing on s.th. • **7 to unwrap** to open s.th. that was packed in paper • **burrito** [bʊˈriːtoʊ] (Mexican) tortilla filled with meat or beans • **8 respite** [ˈrespɪt] break • **eerie** [ˈɪri] weird, strange • **12 to pout** *die Lippen spitzen* • **carne asada** (Spanish) Latin American dish made with grilled beef • **12/13 to pat** to touch s.th. lightly with your hand • **15 infinity** *Ewigkeit* • **26 to sigh** *seufzen*

Page 57

• **1 biometric** using measurements of human characteristics as a means of identifying s.o. • **1/2 iris scanning** scanning the eyes as a means of identification • **4 to implore s.o. to do s.th.** to ask s.o. earnestly to do s.th. • **quieting look** facial expression to tell s.o. to stop talking • **6 access** *Zugang* • **8 do-gooder** *Gutmensch* • **12 to dawn on s.o.** (fig.) to suddenly realize s.th. • **14 to wince** to make an expression on your face because of pain or embarrassment • **15 right** properly • **19 to inhale** to breathe in • **26 core** the most important part • **27 abduction** the act of seizing and taking s.o. away by force

Page 58

• **1 vigorously** *energisch, heftig* • **2 to spray** *spritzen* • **vinaigrette** [ˌvɪnɪˈgret] sauce made with vinegar (*Essig*), oil, and seasoning that is used for salads • **3 done deal** (coll.) a completed task or plan that cannot be changed • **9 to gauge** [geɪdʒ] to estimate, to judge • **11 fuckup** (vulgar) completely incompetent idiot • **14 to send all over the place** (here:) to place in various homes and institutions • **15/16 foster home** household that takes care of orphaned or neglected children • **16 to abduct** *entführen* • **18 to go limp** to suddenly feel weak • **19 to rape** *vergewaltigen* • **closet** small room built into a wall to store things • **20 abandoned** [əˈbændənd] no longer used • **missile** [ˈmɪsl] **silo** deep hole in the ground to hold an atomic missile (*Rackete*) • **21 bunch** (coll.) small group • **22 to pitch s.th.** to promote s.th., to try to convince people of the virtues of s.th.

Page 59

• **1 gotta** (coll.) have got to • **to scoot** (coll., AE) to go or leave in a hurry • **2 to do an unveiling** [ˌʌnˈveɪlɪŋ] to introduce a new project or product for the first time • **4 venue** [ˈvenjuː] place where an event is held • **4 appointed in** (here:) decorated with • **5 anticipation** feeling of excitement about what is going to happen • **8 to model s.th. off s.th.** to design s.th. after a model (*Vorbild*) • **Duomo in Siena** medieval church in Siena, Italy that has white and black stripes on the interior and external structures • **11 lucite**™ hard, artificial material • **amid** (formal) in the middle of • **roar** loud, deep sound • **12 gut** belly • **13 discernible** [dɪˈsɜːrnɪbl] noticeable • **14 to amplify** *verstärken* • **16 to discourage** to try to prevent or stop • **19 to nudge s.o.** to push s.o. gently to get s.o.'s attention • **21 shy** [ʃaɪ] *schüchtern* • **22 to ease permits** to make it easier to get permits • **24 a sprinkling of whoops** occasional whoops [huːp] (*Jauchzer*) • **26 cute** [kjuːt] pretty, attractive • **to blush** to get red in the face when embarrassed

© Westermann

Page 60

• **10 dew** [du:] *Tau* • **bough** [baʊ] (literary) branch of a tree • **11 to catch your breath** to be able to breathe properly again • **12 off-the-cuff** (fig.) without preparation • **13 eloquence** [ˈeləkwəns] the ability to express yourself well • **15 at ease** relaxed • **18 to deprive s.o. of s.th.** to prevent s.o. from having s.th. important or desired • **20 heck** (coll.) milder form of "hell" • **26 break** high wave that is used to surf on

Page 61

• **1 contingent** group • **2 to proliferate** [prəˈlɪfəreɪt] to increase rapidly • **buddy** (coll. AE) *Kumpel* • **7 take** (coll.) opinion • **10 to log on** to connect to an internet system or website using a password • **11 crude** (here:) not of good quality • **Stinson Beach** beach near San Francisco • **13 streaming** sending videos and sound via the internet • **14 to descend** to lower • **16 browser** internet program that allows you to access internet sites • **display** graphics • **17 url** universal resource locator: the address of an internet website • **19 pixilated** having a poor-quality image where the pixels are visible • **to titter** *kichern* • **23 to refresh s.th.** (here:) to renew s.th. with better quality • **24 delivery** (here:) streaming • **26 resolution** *Auflösung*

Point to Ponder: What technologies have improved the quality of streaming and picture taking since **The Circle** was published?

Page 62

• **3 as opposed to** instead of • **6 machine** (here:) computer • **high-res** high resolution • **12 lollipop** *Lutscher* • **14 holds up to this kind of magnification** is capable of maintaining the same quality when magnified (*vergrößert*) •**16 high-def** high definition • **18 to transmit** *senden* • **22 waterproof** *wasserdicht* • **25 to tape s.th.** to use tape (*Klebeband*) to hold s.th. • **stake** *Pfahl* • **26 dune** *Düne* • **28 to access s.th.** (here:) to open a computer file

Page 63

• **2/3 Rodeo Beach** beach near the Golden Gate Bridge • **4 shrunk** reduced in size • **6/7 Montara State Beach, Ocean Beach** beaches near San Francisco • **7 Fort Point** fort built before the American Civil War (1861 – 1865) next to the Golden Gate Bridge • **8 in a grid** in boxes formed by a series of crossing lines • **11 weed** wild plant of not much value • **16 smattering** small amount • **18 closed-circuit TV** *interne Fernsehanlage* • **to cross s.th. with s.th.** to combine s.th. with another thing • **19 extant** available at the present time • **20 prohibitively expensive** much too expensive • **22 to retail** to sell to the general public • **mind you** comment used to draw attention to the preceding phrase • **25 aloft** up in the air • **26 gleefully** happily

Page 64

• **1 tops** (coll.) at the most • **5 feed** (here:) streaming • **6 modest** *bescheiden* • **7 Highway 101**, US Route 101: historical highway that runs along the coast from southern to northern California • **10 discrete** [dɪˈskri:t] (formal) separate • **13 whatever** (coll.) whatever the case may be • **14 to post** (here:) to set up • **17 to be into s.th.** (coll.) to be especially interested in an activity • **19 Tahoe** area in California and Nevada that is home to winter sports • **21 ridge** *Gebirgskamm* • **conifer** *Nadelbaum* • **23 to friend** (coll.) to befriend s.o. on social media • **26 option** choice • **footage** part of a video

Page 65

• **1 to atomize** (fig.) to divide into little pieces • **3 blank** empty • **7 violation** [ˌvaɪəˈleɪʃn] *Verstoß* • **8 to glue** [glu:] *kleben* • **10 hush** sudden silence • **12 banner** large piece of cloth between two poles with a message on it • **13 riot gear** special uniform to protect the police against violent protestors • **17 pedestrian** *Fußgänger, -in* • **unawares** (formal) (here:) without realizing or noticing that they are being recorded • **20 to pan** to move a camera so as to keep a moving subject in the picture • **22 fluidity** (here:) continuous movement without interruptions • **26 Tahrir Square** public square in Cairo • **27 gasp** quick, deep breath caused by shock or surprise • **28 cradle** (fig.) place of origin • **the Egyptian Revolution**, cf. below:

The Egyptian Revolution: large uprising in Egypt against the oppressive regime of President Mubarak in 2011 in the context of the Arab Spring. Mubarak was forced to resign. After a period of continuing unrest that included the election of a radical Islamic regime, General Abdel Fattah El-Sisi was elected President in 2014 and later established a more or less totalitarian state.

© Westermann

Page 66

• **1 to attach** *anbringen* • **6 nametag** *Namenschild* • **9 to roar** to make a loud, deep sound • **12 accountability** obligation to accept responsibility for one's actions • **13 posterity** all future generations • **14 to try** (here:) to bring an accused person to court • **14/15 to clear a place of people** to make people leave a place • 16 **to eliminate s.th.** to get rid of s.th. • **18 abuse** [əˈbjuːs] *Missbrauch* • **20 for all eternity** forever • **to drag s.o./s.th.** to pull s.o./s.th. along with great effort • **22 sea change** (fig.) a radical change • **24 came** (here:) began • **at play** being used • **25 to apply to s.th.** *etwas betreffen* • **26 upheaval** *Aufruhr* • **coverage** (here:) the act of recording events

Page 67

• **1 FBI** Federal Bureau of Investigation: *Bundespolizei* • **2 saturation** (here:) maximum installation of cameras • **5 medley** diverse assortment • **8 to transpire** (formal) to take place • **8/9 Tiananmen Square, cf. below:**

Tiananmen Square in Beijing was the scene of protests in 1989, led by students demonstrating for more democracy, freedom of speech and freedom of the press. Especially interesting was the replica of the Statue of Liberty that was set up by the students in the square. The protests were forcibly suppressed after the government declared martial law. Troops with automatic rifles and tanks killed several hundreds of demonstrators trying to block the military's advance towards Tiananmen Square.

• **10 shot** (here:) video • **11 to erupt** (here:) to become suddenly violent • **12 Khartoum** capital of Sudan, a country plagued by civil war and repressive regimes • **Pyongyang** capital of North Korea, which has one the most repressive regimes in the world • **18 The Hague** [heɪg] city in the Netherlands that is the seat of the International Court of Justice and the International Criminal Court • **20/21 to bear witness** *Zeugnis ablegen* • **21 to this end** (fig.) for this purpose • **24 folks** (coll.) my dear people • **dawn** (fig.) beginning • **Enlightenment** The Enlightenment (*Aufklärung*) was in the 18th century • **27 leaky** *undicht* • **bucket** *Eimer*

Points to Ponder: Discuss the destruction of achievement and learning in **1984** by George Orwell, **Brave New World** by Aldous Huxley, and **Fahrenheit 451** by Ray Bradbury.

Page 68

• **1 the Middle Ages** *das Mittelalter* • **2 monk** *Mönch* • **7 to commit s.th. to memory** to learn s.th. by heart, to memorize • **10 to bring s.th. back home** (here:) to make s.th. more personal • **15 to nap** to sleep for a short time • **16 to ripple** (fig.) to spread like a wave • **18 to sneak, snuck, snuck in** to enter quietly so as not to be noticed • **21 to pad** to walk with quiet steps • **23 oops** comment make when s.o. has made a mistake • **27 Mayanmar** country in Southeast Asia where a repressive military regime still has the upper hand • **28 prediction** *Voraussage*

Page 69

• **5 to yell** to shout • **8 to edit** to make changes to a text or film presumably to improve the quality • **12 Fiji** [ˈfiːdʒiː] group of islands in the South Pacific • **13 ultimate** the best, the greatest • **18 to scold** *rügen* • **21 Machu Picchu** a former Inca fort in Peru • **22 perched** (here:) placed • **23 site** place where there is a building • **26 Mount Kenya** highest mountain in Kenya, Africa • **27 shale** *Schiefer* • **28 peak** the very top of a mountain • **to pan up** to swing a camera upwards, keeping an object in the centre of the picture

Page 70

• **1 to enshroud s.th.** [ɪnˈʃraʊd] (literary) to cover s.th. completely • **2 surrogate** replacement • **bedridden** forced to stay in bed because of illness or old age • **3 frail** [freɪl] weak • **6 Kuala Lumpur** capital of Malaysia • **9 101** U.S. Route 101, highway in California originally built in 1926 • **Jakarta** capital of Indonesia • **Bolinas** community on the Pacific coast near San Francisco • **10 webcam** video camera connected to a computer • **14 to thunder** to roar • **17 glow** (here:) reddish appearance of the face because of excitement, strong emotions, or embarrassment • **20 with child** pregnant • **23 to treat s.o. to s.th.** to provide s.o. with s.th. special • **24 to commemorate s.th.** [kəˈmemәreɪt] *einer Sache gedenken* • **25 slop** (coll.) nonsense

© Westermann

Page 71

• **2 scarce** hardly present • **2/3 building manager** person in charge of making sure everything is functioning properly in a building • **3 Fresno** city in central California • **office park** an office complex • **4 shift** *Nachtschicht* • **6 hair-trigger temper** (fig.) easily becoming suddenly very angry • **7 parking lot** (AE) *Parkhaus* • **two stories** (AE) *zwei Stockwerke* • **8 to man s.th.** to be in charge of s.th., to run s.th. • **9 humiliating** [hjuːˈmɪlieɪtɪŋ] *demütigend* • **10 to comp s.o.** (coll., AE) to provide s.o. with s.th. free, (here:) free parking • **12 a couple guys** (coll.) a couple of people hired (employed) • **to trade shifts** to swap shifts with s.o. • **13/14 to mellow** to become more relaxed • **14 exasperatingly** in a manner causing irritation or annoyance • **15 course** time period • **16 in over your head** (fig.) unable to cope with a situation • **16/17 clueless** (coll.) *ahnungslos* • **18 middle school** (AE) school for children between 11 and 14 • **Disneyland** amusement park in Anaheim, California • **20 at cross-purposes with s.th.** conflicting with s.th., opposed to s.th. • **22 mindless** not requiring much thought • **23 lingering** [ˈlɪŋgərɪŋ] still remaining • **resentmen**t ill feeling, anger because of s.th. you feel was unfair • **25 to douse** (fig.) *löschen*, (here:) to bring to an end • **26 bay** the San Francisco Bay • **28 haunted** old and mysterious as if visited by ghosts

Page 72

• **1 fake-fancy** not actually fancy (= expensive, of high quality) • **2 aglow** (fig.) with the face showing happiness • **to beam** (fig.) *strahlen* • **7 relief** *Erleichterung* • **9 to lunge forward** to suddenly move forward • **10 to scrunch s.th.** to tightly draw or squeeze s.th. together • **11 insult** *Beleidigung* • **12 behind** (coll.) *Anus* • **to boil with envy** (fig.) to feel extreme envy (*Neid*) • **14 to let your salary slip** (coll.) to casually (*beiläufig*) make it known what your salary (*Gehalt*) is • **16/17 sixty thousand** i.e. this amount annually • **21 jeez** (coll.) milder form of "Jesus" • **25 full dental** complete medical insurance coverage for the teeth

Page 73

• **10/11 regulatory issues** (here:) problems with the rules and laws regulating internet use • **13 stock option** right given to employees of a company to buy company stocks (*Aktie*) at a price below the stock market price as a part of an employee's salary • **17 harem** [ˈhærəm] a group of women serving as a man's wives/concubines

Page 74

• **1 pained** *gequält* • **5 to take lunch** (here:) to use the company cafeteria for lunch • **6 point** (here:) important piece of advice • **9 to roll your eyes** *die Augen verdrehen* • **13 to tire** to become tired • *15* **fatigue** [fəˈtiːg] tiredness, exhaustion • **18 B & B** bread and breakfast hotel • **19 to spread, spread, spread s.th. about** *etwas überall verteilen* • **20 eventuality** s.th. unpleasant that may happen in the future • **21 multiple** [ˈmʌltɪpl] **sclerosis** [skləˈroʊsɪs] MS, *multiple Sklerose* • **23 to slur** to speak unclearly with words running into each other • **to overshoot** to reach too far • **25 foyer** [ˈfɔɪər] (AE) entrance hall • **27 to pore over s.th.** (fig.) to look at or read s.th. carefully • **28 to battle with s.th.** to fight with s.th.

Page 75

• **3 as far as her parents were concerned** *was ihre Eltern betraf* • **4 to matter** to be of importance • **8 antlers** horns that grow on the head of a male deer • **9 easy there** expression telling s.o. not to be so aggressive • **barbed** (fig.) sarcastic • **10 to brag** *angeben* • **11 to thrive** *gedeihen* • **14 bewilderment** [bɪˈwɪldərmənt] complete confusion • **15 to blink** (here:) to open and shut the eyes because of surprise • **16 hon** (coll.) honey (*Schatz*) • **17 to let s.th. go** (here:) to no longer deal with a statement just made • **19 regret s.th.** *etwas bereuen* • **20 to swallow the night** (here:) to take the whole night • **22 plain and simple** *ganz einfach* • **25 prescription** (medical) *Rezept* • **26 on** (here:) taking • **Copaxone**™ a drug that reduces the effects of MS, but does not cure it • **28 ornery** [ˈɔːrnəri] (coll., AE) difficult to deal with

Page 76

• **2 pre-approved** accepted as a medication • **7 generic** generic drug**:** a cheaper version of a drug that can be produced by any drug company after the original patent has run out • **8 wrecked** (fig.) *am Boden zerstört* • **10 to torture s.o.** *jdn quälen* • **11 piling-on** (fig.) *zusätzliche Belastung* • **12 obfuscation** [ˌɑːbfʌˈskeɪʃn] (formal) the act of deliberately making s.th. unclear and confusing • **13 denial** [dɪˈnaɪəl] refusal to accept the truth of s.th. • **15 coverage** payment by the insurance company

© Westermann

of certain medical bills • **to dismiss** to reject, to refuse to accept • **16 to thwart** [θwɔːrt] to oppose successfully • **20 to gather** (here:) to sit together • **threadbare** shabby • **20/21 patchwork quilt** blanket with two layers of cloth with feathers or soft material between – the two layers of cloth consist of pieces of various designs of cloth sewn together • **22 necklace** piece of jewellery worn around the neck • **23/24 velvet** *Samt* • **24 rarefied** (ironic): only for a limited number of people

Page 77

• **4 bright** (coll.) intelligent • **8 most crucially** [ˈkruːʃəli] most importantly • **9 belly laugh** (fig.) deep, loud laugh • **11 primary** (here:) occurring most often • **14 upset** worried, agitated • **15 to sneak, snuck, snuck** to go somewhere seeking to avoid being seen • **16 to keel over** to fall over • **17 adolescence** [ˌædəˈlesns] puberty • **to crack s.o. up** (coll.) to make s.o. laugh a lot • **18 priceless** (fig.) *einmalig* • **20 spell** (here:) moment • **25 debacle** [dɪˈbɑːkl] great disaster • **descent** [dɪˈsent] action of going down • **purgatory** [ˈpɜːrgətɔːri] (here:) hell • **26 buoyant** [ˈbɔɪənt] (fig.) cheerful • **27 sherry** [ˈʃeri] a strong wine from Spain

Point to Ponder: Comment on the author's criticism of the American system of health care. How has Obamacare tried to alleviate some of the problems of health care?

Page 78

• **3 at full volume** (fig.) very loudly • **to be out cold** to be in a very deep sleep • **6 to feign** [feɪn] (formal) to pretend • **nonchalance** [ˌnɑːnʃəˈlɑːns] trying to appear unconcerned and relaxed • **7 wayward** [ˈweɪwərd] unpredictable, headstrong, self-willed • **8 venture** undertaking, project • **to raise** to grow and produce • **lobster** *Hummel* • **rice paddy** field where rice is grown • **10 in a row** one after the other • **11 to fade** to become weaker • **12 to settle up** to relax, to make yourself comfortable • **to recline** to lie down, to sit, leaning backwards • **14 to hush s.o.** to tell s.o. to be quiet • **20 bill** *Rechnung* • **21 wisps** small, thin hairs • **24 to interlock** to join together firmly • **unremarkable** ordinary

Page 79

• **5 kayaking** [ˈkaɪækɪŋ] a water sport with a kind of canoe • **7 awkward** not graceful • **dull** boring • **waterline** surface of the water • **9 twisting** (here:) bending and turning the paddle • **pace** speed • **10 professional-grade** of the level or quality used by professionals • **12 exposed** not covered, open to view • **13 harbor seal** small seal (*Seehund*) (*Phoca vitulina*) • **14 underappreciated** not recognized enough • **15 body of water** lake, sea, bay, etc. • **woefully** [ˈwoʊfəli] in a sad or disappointed manner • **16 to launch** to set off from land into a body of water • **outfitter** person providing equipment • **17 fuss** unnecessary worry, a lot of preparation • **19 to pull off a road, highway, etc.** to leave a road, highway, etc. and park • **20 placid** [ˈplæsɪd] calm, without waves • **glassine** [glæsˈsiːn (here:) transparent, clear • **22 bowlegged** [ˌboʊˈlegɪd] *o-beinig* • **frizzy-haired** with hair formed of small, tight curls • **23 maiden** [ˈmeɪdn] (ironic) young girl • **25 to strike it rich** (coll.) to suddenly make a lot of money • **stationery** materials for the office, e.g. paper, envelopes, pens, pencils, erasers, etc. • **26 rental** *Vermietung* • **paddle-board** board used for riding the waves or rescuing swimmers • **operation** (here:) business

Page 80

• **1 accommodating** [əˈkɑːmədeɪtɪŋ] helpful even in a difficult situation • **4 gorgeous** [ˈgɔːrdʒəs] lovely to look at • **6 life preserver** special vest to keep you above the water in an accident • **7 to bother** [ˈbɑːðər] to annoy • **8 to snoop** (coll.) to look around where you are not wanted • **footies** special waterproof clothing that covers the shoes and trousers • **windbreaker** jacket that is wind-resistant • **9 choppy** with a lot of waves, not smooth • **10 to decline** to not accept an offer • **12 breaker** large wave breaking into foam (*Schaum*) as it approaches land • **paddle-boarder** persons who rides on waves with a board and paddles • **15 to confound s.o.** to confuse s.o., to be a mystery to s.o. • **jetski** Jet Ski™: small motorized boat for riding across water • **15/16 casual fisherman** person who occasionally fishes • **occasional** appearing from time to time • **17 frigid** very cold • **20 complaint** *Beschwerde* • **21 belly** (fig.) deepest part • **23 to scoop s.th.** (here:) to raise s.th. up with a cupped hand • **to drench s.th.** to make s.th. completely wet • **27 glossy sheen** smooth and shiny surface • **marble** *Marmor* • **28 lap** *Schoß*

© Westermann

Page 81

• **1 unreflective** (fig.) without any deep thoughts, blank • **2 locked** fixed • **mutual** [ˈmjuːtʃuəl] *gegenseitig* • **regard** the act of looking at s.th./s.o. attentively • **3 luxuriated** [lʌgˈʒʊrieɪtɪd] **in itself** (fig.) seemed to enjoy ever more intensely its own existence • **5 gust** sudden, strong rush of wind • **pungent** [ˈpʌndʒənt] having a strong taste or smell • **7 cross** mixture • **tuna** *Thunfisch* • **8 upwind** in the opposite direction to the way the wind is blowing • **8/9 to duck underwater** to suddenly dive down • **11 buoy** [bɔɪ] floating object fastened to the bottom to mark a position in the water for a safe channel or to warn of s.th. dangerous under the water • **to spot** to see or notice • **bend** curve • **peninsula** [pəˈnɪnsələ] *Halbinsel* • **12 en route** on the way • **13 barge** large boat with a flat bottom to carry goods • **15 mystery** something that cannot be understood or explained • **16 Confederate flag** flag used by the South during the Civil War • **18 to pick up** to increase in speed • **21 eelgrass** plant with long leaves that grows under the water • **22 to go, went, gone shallow** to become less and less deep • **25 to engulf** to surround • **27 shin** *Schienbein* • **soaked** completely wet • **28 swath** [swɑːθ] long, broad strip • **bejeweled** (fig.) as if covered by jewels

Page 82

• **1 seaweed** *Seetang* • **iridescent** [ˌɪrɪˈdesnt] (formal) displaying many colours that change whenever the observer's position changes • **3 ruffled extravagantly** (fig.) extremely uneven • **6 to scurry** to run with quick, short steps • **shelter** place of safety • **7 downshore** farther down the shore • **trunk** *Stamm* • **9 to bleach** *bleichen* • **10 to sob** to cry noisily • **mess** (here:) in a terrible state • **26 snot** (coll.) *Rotz* • **17 underside** inside surface • **28 brisk pace** fast speed

Page 83

• **2 steady** [ˈstedi] (here:) *regelmäßig* • **4 to tilt s.o.** to cause s.o. to move to the side • **7 leopard shark** (*Triakis semifasciata*) shark found along the Pacific coast of North America – it is harmless to humans. • **bat ray** (*Myliobatis californica*) ray (*Rochen*) found along the Pacific coast of the USA – it is considered harmless when not attacked. • **8 harbor porpoise** [ˈpɔːrpəs] (*Phocoena phocoena*) porpoise (*Tümmler*) that stays close to coastal areas • **17 better part of an hour** close to an hour • **23 trying** requiring a lot of effort • **24 limbs** [lɪmz] legs and arms • **leaden** [ˈledn] (fig.) heavy like lead (*Blei*) • **25 chips** (AE) crisps (BE)

Page 84

• **2 to gather s.o**. (here:) to fetch s.o. • **-odd** approximately • **rep** (coll.) representative • **4 hazardous** [ˈhæzərdəs] involving risk or danger • **8 respite** [ˈrespɪt] short break • **10 par for the course** (golf, fig.) normal, as can be expected • **13 grumpy** (coll.) in a bad mood • 18 **to equate s.th. with s.th. else** to give s.th. the same value as s.th. else • **monumenta**l (here:) extreme • **18/19 breach of duty** (*Pflicht*) not doing what you are obliged to do • **19 to rattle** *klappern* • **21 to dangle** to hang down loosely • **22 stool** [stuːl] *Hocker* • **23 to no avail** *vergeblich* • **24 to text s.o.** *jdm eine SMS schicken* • **26 veggie** (coll.) vegetarian • **27 soda** (AE) *Limonade* • **28 wrinkled** *mit Falten* • **carpenter** *Zimmermann* • **perch** (here:) position where s.o. is seated

Page 85

• 1/2 to approximate s.th. to do s.th. that is not exactly correct or accurate • **4 splashing** causing water to spread in many directions • **7 prominent** sticking out • **to shrink, shrank, shrunken** *eingehen* • **11 aptitude** skill, talent • **12 Christian Scientist** person who believes in Christian Science, cf. below:

> According to Christian Science, disease is a mental error rather than physical disorder. A sick person should not be treated by medicine, instead healing comes about by a form of prayer. Ill health is only an illusion.

• **pharmacy** [ˈfɑːrməsi] (AE) *Apotheke* • **16 to show up** (coll.) to appear • **18 flow** (fig.) the work that piles up • **22 Did you guys actually make out?** (coll., AE) *Habt ihr tatsächlich miteinander rumgemacht?* • **spot** place

© Westermann

Page 86

• **5 previous** [ˈpriːviəs] happening before • **12 gory** [ˈgɔːri] involving a lot of blood and violence • **16 director** *Regisseur, -in* • **19 Q&A** time when questions can be asked and answers given by the speaker • **involved in** a part of • **19/20 protracted** lasting longer than expected • **20 custody battle** legal conflict to determine who should take care of the children of a divorced couple • **21 issue** [ˈɪʃuː] problem • **on-screen** i.e. in the film • **26 to tiptoe around s.o.** (fig.) to be very careful about what you say to s.o. • **27 territory** (fig.) subject matter

Page 87

• **3 off-balance** (fig.) unsure about what to say and how to react • **5 on your toes** (fig.) alert and prepared for any surprise • **6 intimidated** frightened because of feeling threatened • **to handcuff s.o.** to put handcuffs (*Handschellen*) on s.o. • **to prostrate yourself** to lie on the ground with your face downwards • **10 neatly** in the proper manner, precisely • **driveway** road from the main road to a house • **16 tinkle** (fig.) small amount of urine • **18 implant** (here:) placing a small chip into the body • **20 vague** [veɪg] unclear, indefinite • **recollection** *Erinnerung* • **25 to insert s.th. into s.th.** to put s.th. into s.th. • **wrist** [rɪst] *Handgelenk* • **26 sound** (here:) properly tested • **28 court** *Gericht* • **challenge** (here:) *Klage*

Page 88

• **1 objection** *Einwand* • **the polling is through the roof** (fig.) the approval rate is very high • **8 to track** to allow you to find the location of s.th. by following certain marks or signs • **14 tempting** appealing • **16 reasoning** manner of argumentation • **18 shallow** not very deep below the surface • **23 related** connected in some way • **27 to make a face** (here:) to produce an expression of displeasure on your face

Page 89

• **1 to freak out** (coll.) to become extremely anxious • **3 walkie-talkie** small, portable electronic device used to communicate with s.o. at short distances • **6 bunch** (coll.) number • **8 tracker** small electronic device that allows you to determine the location of s.th. • **to embed s.th. into s.th.** to insert s.th. into s.th. • **9 with the naked eye** (fig.) only with your eyes • **13 massive alert** many notifications of danger • **14/15 authorities** (here:) the police • **17 molester** person who attacks another person sexually • **19 to descend upon s.o.** (here:) to find and capture s.o. • **21 to jam** *stören* • **transmission** *Sendung* • **22 expertise** [ˌekspɜːrˈtiːz] *Fachkenntnisse* • **23 pedophile** [ˈpiːdoʊfaɪl] person who is sexually attracted to children • **24 rape** *Vergewaltigung* • **25 ankle** *Fußknöchel*

Page 90

• **3 to poll** to ask a lot of people about their opinion of s.th. • **4 initial** [ɪˈnɪʃl] happening at first • **squeamishness** [ˈskwiːmɪʃnəs] quality of being overly sensitive about s.th. unpleasant • **5 approval** support, favourable opinion • **11 relentless** never stopping • **score** *Ergebnis* • **barely** hardly • **14 to grab a few minutes with s.o.** (fig.) to find the time to talk to s.o. for a short time • **16 to pee** (vulgar) to urinate • **22 grimly** gloomily, in a manner sounding very serious • **23 hygienic** [haɪˈdʒenɪk] **intimacy** (ironic) revealing what you are going to do in the bathroom • **25 skinny** (here:) tight-fitting • **snug** fitting very closely • **long-sleeved** with long sleeves (*Ärmel*)

Page 91

• **1/2 bathed in a blue-white light** (fig.) covered with a blue-white light • **14 to take it** (coll.) to assume • **17 to take s.o. in** (coll.) to examine s.o.'s appearance • **oval** [ˈoʊvl] • **19 sinewy** [ˈsɪnjuːi] having a thin but muscular body • **20 jersey** close-fitting sweater • **silhouette** [ˌsɪluˈet] outer shape • **brushstroke** *Pinselstrich* • **20/21 calligraphy** [kəˈlɪgrəfi] artistic handwriting or lettering • **22 to scoff at s.th.** to talk about s.th. in a manner that shows you think s.th. is ridiculous or stupid

Page 92

• **1 sturdy** firm • **2 perfunctory** [pərˈfʌŋktəri] done out of habit, showing little interest • **3 point** purpose • **8 unsettled** nervous, uncertain • **9 ID** (here:) identity card • **cord** thick string • **10 pointed** seeming to have a certain purpose • **12 corporate** (here:) company • **spy** *Spion* • **13/14 fellow Circler** *Mitarbeiter bei* The Circle • **26 to hew** [hjuː] **to s.th.** (here:) to follow a certain pattern • **26/27 anomaly** [əˈnɑːməli] exception • **27 atonal** [eɪˈtoʊnl] (fig.) not using a traditional musical tonality

© Westermann

Page 93

• **1 unassuming** *bescheiden* • **2 threat** *Drohung* • **remote** (here:) not likely at all • **6 mundane** dull, ordinary • **7 rapt** intensely interested • **9 removed** absent • **15 abundantly clear** very obvious • **18 audible** able to be heard • **20 exhalation** act of allowing air to flow out of the nose when breathing out • **odd** strange • **22 to clear your throat** *sich räuspern* • **23 to head out** (coll.) to leave • **to slip away** to leave quickly and quietly • **24 pace** *Tempo* • **to unpack** (fig.) to analyse

Page 94

• **6 to emanate from s.th.** to flow from s.th. • **5 mascara** makeup put on the eyelids to make them darker • **8 to set up** to plan • **socials** social activities • **13 to curse** *fluchen* • **to overwhelm** *überwältigen* • **15 to frown** *die Stirn runzeln* • **16 to backtrack** to change what you said before because of being put under pressure • **miscalculation** mistake, misjudgement • **17 extracurricular stuff** activities in your leisure time • **18 to tilt s.th.** to bend s.th. to one side • **21 integral to s.th.** an essential part of s.th

Page 95

• **3 to appease s.o.** to make s.o. less angry and calmer by doing what s.o. wants • **4 distracted** (here:) unable to concentrate because of worrying about s.th. • **to delay** to do s.th. at a later time • **10 to hit a groove** (fig.) to find a subject that interests you • **12 root word** word from the past from which new words are developed • **16 crazed** (here:) completely overwhelmed • **17 to set it up** (here:) to prepare my profile and my account for The Circle • **22 to misstate** to state incorrectly • **24 divider** separating wall in an office

Page 96

• **4 thrill** strong feeling of excitement • **5 elaborate** [ɪˈlæbərət] complicated and detailed • **6 low on the ladder** (fig.) having an insignificant position • **13 to kid** (coll.) to joke • **22 staffer** (AE) employee in a larger firm • **to check in** (here:) to arrive at the office • **24 pool** (here:) list of all the Circlers

Page 97

• **1 feature** (here:) piece of equipment • **2 rating** measurement of how good s.th. is • **14 MaeDay,** cf. below:

> May Day: the first day of May is often celebrated as a holiday in honour of a country's working population, or as a springtime festival. "Mayday" is also the international radio signal for ships and planes in an emergency situation. The war holiday in America is Memorial Day on the last Monday of May to commemorate those American soldiers who died in wars.

• **18/19 in terms of** with respect to • **23 to rank** *einstufen* • **24 to slice s.th.** (here:) to categorise s.th. • **26 indie** pop music produced by a small record company • **country** country and western music • **28 cross-pollinating** (fig.) mutually influencing

Page 98

• **2/3 primary** main • **5 cute** [kjuːt] (coll., AE) (here:) clever • **to merge** to join together • **6 distinct** separate, unique • **10 to rock s.th.** (coll.) to radically change s.th. • **11 to tap s.th.** to touch s.th. lightly • **torrent** [ˈtɔːrənt] (fig.) powerful stream • **17 to scramble** to rush • **18 periodically** occasionally, from time to time • **to settle at s.th.** to finally stop at s.th. • **20 to catch up** to take care of matters that couldn't be dealt with at an earlier time • **brightly** cheerfully • **26 cascade** (fig.) large amount

Page 99

• **2 feast** (fig.) large, special meal • **5 hierarchy** [ˈhaɪərɑːrki] • **7 paramount** [ˈpærəmaʊnt] more important than anything else • **13 to inform s.th.** (here:) to reveal s.th. • **17 superfluous** [suːˈpɜːrfluəs] unnecessary • **18 to prioritize** [praɪˈɔːrətaɪz] **s.th**. to put s.th. in a list of importance • **19 urgent** *dringend* • **20 mandatory** (formal) required, obligatory • **21 pressing** requiring immediate attention • **22 to prompt** to cause, to bring about • **27 calibration** the act of measuring s.th. precisely

© Westermann

Page 100

• **9 crap** (coll.) exclamation to express anger or annoyance • **13 rank** *Stufe, Grad* • **15 algorithm** [ˈælgərɪðəm] **-generated** created in a step-by-step procedure by a computer • **to take s.th. into account** *berücksichtigen* • **26 to get factored in** to be taken into account • **27 accordingly** *dementsprechend*

Page 101

• **4 boost** s.th. to help or encourage s.o. • **8 to manifest itself** to make itself obvious for everyone to see • **vis-à-vis** [ˌviːz ɑː ˈviː] (French) *gegenüber* • **overall** general • **11 to get hold of s.o.** (coll.) to contact s.o.

Points to Ponder: What is your reaction to Gina? Do you think Mae might be having doubts about The Circle?

• **13 intra-company stream** the stream of information exchanged within the company • **16 aphorism** [ˈæfərɪzəm] short, wise saying • **MLK**, cf. below:

Martin Luther King, Jr. (1929 – 1968): leading civil rights leader who believed in non-violent action

• **17 Gandhi**, cf. below:

Mahatma Gandhi (1869 – 1948): Indian nationalist leader who brought about Indian independence through non-violent action

• **Salk**, cf. below:

Jonas Salk (1914 – 1995): developer of the first effective vaccine (*Impfstoff*) against polio

• **Mother Teresa**, cf. below:

(1910 – 1997) Roman Catholic nun who founded institutions to help the poor and sick in India

• **Steve Jobs**, cf. below:

(1955 – 2011) co-founder of Apple, Inc.

• **18/19 Congressman** member of the US House of Representatives • **19 Médecins Sans Frontières**, cf. below

International organization that was founded in 1971 to provide medical care to people in war-torn areas and areas affected by endemic diseases.

• **20 sting of remorse** (fig.) painful feeling of guilt or regret• **21 Muhammad Yunus**, cf. below:

Muhammad Yunus (1940 –) is a Bangladeshi entrepreneur and banker who was awarded the Nobel Peace Prize for founding the Grameen Bank, which extended credit to start-ups, which no ordinary bank would service.

• **22 to plow through s.th.** (fig.) to spend a lot of time looking through a lot of reading material • **24 to gauge** [geɪdʒ] to measure • **25 optimal** the best

Page 102

• **2 to solicit s.o.** [səˈlɪsɪt] (formal) to ask for s.th. in a determined way • **4 adamantly** in a manner showing you refuse to change your opinion • **6 to be dedicated to s.th.** (here:) to only be interested in s.th. • **lapdog** *Schoßhund* • **9 to prompt** to cause to bring about • **15 crochet** [kroʊˈʃeɪ] a kind of knitting with a thick needle and thread • **soccer** (AE) European football • **Hitchcock**, cf. below

Alfred Hitchcock (1899 – 1980) was English film director and producer, famous for his suspenseful films and considered one of the greatest influences on filmmaking in the 20th century.

© Westermann

• **18 adoptee** person who is adopted • **20 meet** (here:) contest • **22 glitch** (coll.) small technical problem that prevents s.th. from working properly • **mediator** [ˈmiːdieɪtər] person or organization that tries to get two parties to agree to solving a conflict • **23 lingering** still remaining • **grievance** complaint or protest about s.th. considered unfair • **25 fuel** [ˈfjuːəl] *Kraftstoff* • **fair-trade** social movement that seeks to ensure that products from developing countries are paid for at a fair price • **sneakers** shoes worn for sport or casual wear • **26 locally sourced** produced in a nearby area • **26/27 conceivable** imaginable • **27 R&D** research and development • **outreach** services and assistance to poor and disadvantaged people • **professional** having to do with doctors, lawyers, etc. • **28 philanthropic** [ˌfɪlənˈθrɑːpɪk] having to do with helping the poor and needy • **plummeting** feeling of s.th. suddenly falling

Page 103

• **7 alert** important message • **12 remedy** [ˈremədi] treatment or medicine to cure a disease • **15 to puke** [pjuːk] (coll.) to vomit • **17 bassist** [ˈbeɪsɪst] person who plays an electric bass guitar • **18 to loop s.o. into a conversation** (fig.) to get s.o. to join a conversation • **Damien Ghilotti** not a real person • **20 to resonate with s.o.** (fig.) to interest s.o. emotionally • **21 involved** *beteiligt* • **24 Boulder** [ˈboʊldər] city in Colorado • **Bath** city in England • **Gainesville** city in Florida • **28 in Afghanistan**, cf. info box on p. 36 for line 18

Page 104

• 1 **insurgent** rebel • **2 to pose as s.th.** to pretend to be s.o. in order to trick people • **4 relief** *Erleichterung* • **6 efficacy** [ˈefɪkəsi] effectiveness • **7 Grenada**, cf. below:

Grenada: a group of islands in the south-eastern Caribbean Sea that was invaded by the USA in 1983 to prevent a Marxist takeover

• **9 illicit** illegal • **11 to alleviate** to make less severe • **glaucoma** [glaʊˈkoʊmə] *güner Star* • **12 frenetic** frantic • **14 to sign off** to announce the end of s.th. • **16 backlog** work that still has to be taken care of • **18 chute** (here:) incoming messages • **20 lull** quiet period

Page 105

• **1 downtime** pause when the computer is not in operation • **4 flow** (here:) amount of information coming in • **4/5 exhilarating** [ɪgˈzɪləreɪtɪŋ] refreshing, stimulating • **6 to pioneer s.th.** to do s.th. entirely new • **7 proximity** [prɑːkˈsɪməti] (formal) quality of being nearby • **8 well-curated** well-administered • **10 to vet s.th.** to check the quality of s.th. • **11 gene pool** the genes available in a certain population • **phenomenal** [fəˈnɑːmɪnl] extraordinary • **12 to endeavor to do s.th.** [ɪnˈdevər] (formal) to attempt to do s.th. • **14 to disseminate s.th.** [dɪˈsemɪneɪt] (formal) to spread s.th. • **15 wiped out** (coll.) *fix und fertig* • **16 with her cerebral** [səˈriːbrəl] **cortex** (part of the brain that controls the senses and bodily movement) **removed** (fig.) without taking in any stimuli • **19 mins** (coll.) minutes • **21 doorjamb** [ˈdɔːrdʒæm] *Türpfosten* • 23 **to perplex** to puzzle • **23/24 to put your finger on s.th.** (fig.) to determine exactly the reason for s.th. • **24 to extend** (here:) *strecken* • **to slip past** to quickly and quietly walk past s.o. • **26 to assume** *annehmen*

Page 106

• **1 swirl** large curl • **sandy brown** reddish brown • **2 frame** (here:) body • **3 two-by-four** piece of wood two inches wide and four inches long • **to extend s.th.** (here:) to reach s.th. out • **6 resignation** feeling of being unable to avoid s.th. unpleasant • **7 washed ashore and rotting** (fig.) like s.th. left on the beach by waves and starting to smell awful • **11 steady** (here:) not moving • **13 to fester** (here:) to become worse • **14 to blink** to open and close the eyes • **furiously** (here:) with great energy • **16 c'mon** (coll.) come on, i.e. be reasonable • **19 to linger** to continue for longer than expected • **23 to tread, trod, trod water** (fig.) to remain inactive until the situation becomes clear • **26 to shrug** *die Achseln zucken* • **27 to fumble** [ˈfʌmbl] (here:) to find it difficult to find the right words

© Westermann

Page 107

• **3 to venture** (here:) to say s.th. carefully because you think what you say might not be liked • **4 confirmation** *Bestätigung* • **4 to be onto s.th.** (coll.) to be on the right track about s.th. • **5 to take a leap** (fig.) to take a big risk • **8 assumption** *Annahme* • **9 inherently** intrinsically, basically • **17 to engage** (here:) to become more willing to communicate again • **18 to pat** to touch lightly with the flat of the hand • **19 oblivious** [əˈblɪviəs] lacking memory, not aware • **25 flow** (here:) the passing of data • **27 to hug it out** (coll.) to hug one another • **scrum** (here:) group of people holding each other tightly

Page 108

• **4 HR** (abbreviation) human resources: department concerned with the performance and management of the employees of a firm • **14 RSVP** *répondez s'il vous plait* (French): please reply (to confirm whether you accept the invitation) • **16 distressed** upset • **21 to host** [hoʊst] to organize a party to which you invite guests • **25 delicate** [ˈdelɪkət] fragile • **26 to rejuvenate** [rɪˈdʒuːvəneɪt] to restore to an energetic state • **27 warranted** justified

Page 109

• **2 to submit s.th.** to hand s.th. in, to deliver • **5 a fiercely committed Circler** a person extremely devoted to The Circle

Points to Ponder: What do you think of the Alistair incident and Mae's reaction?

• **9 granola bar** small, rectangular piece of breakfast food consisting of brown sugar, nuts, grain, coconut, raisins, etc. pressed together • **to squint up at s.o.** to look up at s.o. with your eyes partially closed • **10 tardy** (formal) late in arriving • **13 to make a face** (fig.) to make an expression on your face to show that you are not pleased with s.th. • **14 to chew** [tʃuː] *kauen* • **20 in quick succession** occurring quickly one after the other • **20/21 profound unease** great feeling of anxiety • **23 remotely** far away • **26 to get called on the carpet** (coll., AE) to be severely criticized for having done s.th. wrong by s.o. in authority

Page 110

• **6 to protrude** (fig.) to stick out, (here:) to be very noticeable • **11 freak** (coll., AE) fan • **17 wall-mounted** fixed to the wall • **pad** (here:) soft rectangular structure

Page 111

• **3 alight** (fig.) lighted up • 4 **mischief** [ˈmɪstʃɪf] plans to do s.th. naughty • **surreal** [səˈriːəl] quite fantastic and strange • **5 weirded** [ˈwɪrdɪd] **out** (coll.) in a state of confusion because of the recent strange events having to do with Alistair • **7 cross** combination • **8 trade show** *Fachmesse* • **10 vaguely** [ˈveɪgli] (here:) somewhat • **12 gift bag place** (here:) large room where there is a presentation of decorative bags filled with expensive products – these bags are intended for celebrities to take with them. • **celebrity** famous person • **14 pumps** (AE) woman's formal shoes not covered at the top • **16 energy bar** small rectangular piece of food to give you instant energy • **21 rotating** (here:) constantly changing • **25 to zap s.th.** (here:) to connect electronically to s.th.

Page 112

• **2/3 prototype** [ˈproʊtətaɪp] first design of a product that is to be mass-produced • **4 Levi's**™ [ˈliːvaɪz] brand of jeans • **10 as opposed to** instead of • **12 early adopter** (here:) person who wears the latest fashion • **15 to retrieve** (here:) *holen* • **16 to hover over s.th.** (here:) to spend some time looking at s.th. • **display** exhibition • **17 accessory** [əkˈsesəri] additional equipment that is attractive but not essential • **phone shell** hard, protective covering for a mobile phone • **sturdy** *stabil* • **18 chamois** [ˈʃæmi] **-smooth** smooth like a chamois (piece of soft leather used to polish metal or clean windows) • **23 spacy lapse** (coll.) moment of absentmindedness • **28 input** (here:) new information and experiences

© Westermann

Page 113

• **5 beyond all reason** not reasonable at all • **8 nuts** (coll., AE) crazy people • **9 to enable s.o.** to make it possible for s.o. to do s.th. • **to overlap** (here:) to meet or contact s.o. at the same place and time • **13 bra** (coll.) *BH* • **14 shoplifter** *Ladendieb* • **16 to go, went, gone off on s.o.** (coll.) to make critical remarks about s.o. • **19 msg** (coll.) message • **22 you suck** (slang) expression of disapproval/contempt towards s.b. • **23 to offend s.o**. *jdn beleidigen* • **23/24 to go all silent-treatment** (coll.) to refuse to communicate with s.o. because you feel insulted • **25 v.** very • **26 bitch** (vulgar) *Hexe* • **27 to tattle on s.o.** (coll.) *jdn verpetzen*

Page 114

• **1 What is up?** (coll.) What's going on? • **3 through** (coll.) finished • **6 spaz** (coll., offensive) word for a stupid person • **8 sample room** room with the gift bags • **10 to tell on s.o.** (coll.) to tattle on s.o. • **13 what the fuck** (vulgar) what are you talking about?

Page 115

• **7 clusterfuck** (vulgar slang) series of crises • **11 government-hassle stuff** (coll.) conflict with government regulations or laws • **12 dimple** *Grübchen* • **16 subcommittee** special committee formed by the US Senate or House of Representatives to investigate a scandal or conflict with the law • **17 to hang, hung, hung up** *auflegen* • **21 benefit** (here:) concert held for a charitable cause • **24 to cajole** [kəˈdʒoʊl] **s.o.** to persuade s.o. to do s.th. by being especially nice

Page 116

• **5 faded** no longer with bright colours • **to tape** *mit einem Klebeband versehen* • **6 haphazardly** [hæpˈhæzərdli] without any organization • **7 Singha** an Asian beer • **8 to strain** to make a great effort to do s.th. • **erect** *aufrecht* • **15 turmoil** [ˈtɜːrmɔɪl] extreme confusion or agitation • **16 move** (here:) attempt to start a close relationship with a person • **18 to club** (fig.) to hit with a heavy stick • **20 unfiltered** (here:) spontaneous, without thinking first • **21 riding the crest of a Singha wave** (fig.) overwhelmed by the effect of the alcohol in the beer • **23 intersection** (AE) place where two or more roads meet • **24 to mime** to act a part by using gestures rather than words

Page 117

• **2 haunches** [hɔːntʃ] buttocks (*Gesäß*) and upper part of the legs • **3 alley** narrow street between buildings • **piazza** [piˈɑːzə] (here:) covered passageway • **8 at ease** relaxed • **10 lust** sexual desire • **13 to cluck** to make a sound with your tongue to show that you disapprove of s.th. • **to hoot** to shout or laugh in a manner showing you disapprove of s.th. • **15 halo** [ˈheɪloʊ] *Heiligenschein* • **17 to shimmer** to shine with a soft, unsteady light • **19 to fuel s.th. with s.th.** (fig.) to provide s.th. with the power to do s.th. • **hardship** difficulty • **25 fire exit** *Notausgang*

Page 118

• **1 Paleozoic** relating to a time many millions of years ago • **1/2 paddle court** place where a sport called padel is played • **5 crackle** (coll.) feeling of cheerfulness • **6 astounding** amazing • **13 to spin, spun, spun off** (here:) to establish a new project with a new direction based on an old one • **14 airing** discussion in public about s.th. • **22 treat** s.th. very pleasant and out of the ordinary • **23 treasure** *Schatz* • **jack-of-all-trades** (fig.) person who is adept at various tasks • **24 a while back** (coll.) at some point in the past • **26 to cede the stage to s.o.** (fig.) to allow s.o. to continue with a presentation after you're finished • **27 preternaturally** inexplicable by ordinary means • **timid** shy and nervous

Page 119

• **1 demeanor** [dɪˈmiːnər] appearance and behaviour • **to pitter** (coll.) to walk with tiny steps • **to tip-toe** to walk on the front part of your feet • **3 pathetic** pitiful • **5 mate** (here:) wife or husband • **17 delivery** the way s.o. speaks • **20 to match s.o. up** to find a suitable person for s.o. • **21 rendevous** [ˈrɑːndɪvuː] arranged meeting • **21/22 to entertain an idea** to consider an idea as possible • **22 DNA** (biology) genetic information within a person's cells • **23 screwed** (coll.) in a bad situation • **24 celibate** [ˈselɪbət] not having sex • **25 to stress over s.th.** to try to make a decision about s.th. that causes great anxiety • **26 dungeon** [ˈdʌndʒən] *Verlies*

© Westermann

Page 120

• **6 icon** little symbol on a computer screen • **11 beta version** (computer) a new computer program that is being tested • **12 to suck** (slang) to be very bad • **19 surgical** (fig.) precise • **19/20 to make an ass of yourself** (coll.) to make a fool of yourself • **21 baba** (Indian dialect) father • **sterile** [ˈsterəl] unable to produce children

Page 121

• **1 to peer around** to look around carefully, especially when it is difficult to see • **2 to shield s.th.** to cover s.th. for protection • **9 to envelop** [ɪnˈveləp] to surround, to completely cover • **spotlight** *Scheinwerferlicht* • **15 to assure yourself of s.th.** (formal) to make yourself certain about s.th. • **22/23 confidence** *Selbstvertrauen*

Page 122

• **3 to peek** to look at s.th. quickly and secretly • **4 imperceptible** hardly noticeable • **6 the proceedings** the events presently occurring • **7 game-show host** person who runs a TV program with contestants playing a game to win a prize • **9 three-foot** about 91 cm • **16 stanza** group of lines in a poem that form a unit • **25/26 to collate** [kəˈleɪt] to examine and compare • **26 to review** to write about your opinion of s.th. • **27 to indicate** to show

Page 123

• **4 assertion** [əˈsɜːrʃn] claim • **9 leavened** [ˈlevnd] **bread** bread made with yeast (*Hefe*) – gluten is found in bread made of wheat, barley, rye, and oat. It is considered the cause of numerous allergic reactions in humans. • **to mug** (coll., AE) to pose in a silly manner or make a face, especially on the stage to an audience or in front of a camera • **14 to take heed** (formal) to pay close attention • **17 gamely** in a manner showing willingness to continue • **23 bull . . . shite** (shit) (vulgar) nonsense • **26 subset list** additional list that follows from a topic in the main list

Page 124

• **1 uncanny** unsettling, unnerving • **2 to feature** (here:) to reveal • **10 vista** panorama • **11 to ham it up** (coll.) to act on the stage with exaggerated gestures • **16 aisle** [aɪl] *Gang* • **17 overcast** clouded over • **22 carrion** [ˈkæriən] **bird** bird that eats the flesh of dead animals • **24 shifty** (coll.) having a dishonest appearance • **25 wretched** horrible

Page 125

• **2 certainty** s.th. that is certain • **3 corporeal** [kɔːrˈpɔːriəl] (formal) physical • **5 to spring, sprang, sprung s.th. on s.o.** (coll.) to surprise s.o. with an unexpected, often unpleasant action • **11 to cull** (here:) to collect • **12/13 revelation** the act of making s.th. surprising known to the public • **17 to mortify s.o.** [ˈmɔːrtɪfaɪ] s.o. to cause s.o. to feel humiliated • **19 pinpoint** exact • **algorithm** step by step procedure for solving a problem, especially with the use of a computer • **20 matrix** [ˈmeɪtrɪks] (here:) network • **21 essence** [ˈesns] fundamental nature • **22 distorted** changed in shape so that the representation gives a false impression

Points to Ponder: Consider how the issue of privacy is dealt with here and how the EU has tried to address this issue.

Page 126

• **1 to blink** (here:) to flash on and off • **6 seizure** [ˈsiːʒər] sudden attack of a disease • **14 Toyota** Japanese make of car • **15 mental bramble** (fig.) state of great anxiety and confusion • **16 gory** [ˈgɔːri] (here:) unpleasant to see • **18 apart** separated • **to jar s.o.** to have a disagreeable effect on s.o. • **lumpy** shapeless • **22 pear** [per] *Birne*

© Westermann

Page 127

• **1 lengthwise** in the direction of the length of s.th. • **6 scare** s.th. frightening • **to peter out** (coll.) to lose intensity • **7 imperceptibly** in a manner hardly noticeable • **to inch s.th.** to move s.th. slowly in a certain direction • **10 ninth inning** last round in the game of baseball • **27 EMT** emergency medical technician: person who provides emergency services on the way to the hospital in an ambulance • **siren** [ˈsaɪrən] *Sirene*

Page 128

• **4 to fume** [fjuːm] to become very angry • **red panic** (fig.) great panic • **to anoint s.o.** (ironic) to choose s.o. for a certain position as if a part of a religious ceremony • **7 negligent** [ˈneglɪdʒənt] not giving enough attention or care • **superfluous** [suːˈpɜːrfluəs] *überflüssig* • **11 straight-upness** (coll.) sincerity (*Aufrichtigkeit*) • **reliability** [rɪˌlaɪəˈbɪləti] dependability (*Zuverlässigkeit*) • **boundless** without limit • **empathy** [ˈempəθi] being understanding of another person's problems or suffering • **12 diffident** shy, timid • **moody** in a bad mood (*Laune*) • **unavailable** not able to be contacted • **15 cue** [kjuː] signal to do s.th. • **18 to recount** (formal) to talk about what you have experienced • **19 to diminish** (formal) to decrease • **20 numbness** [nʌmnəs] inability to feel anything • **21 addressable** capable of being identified and dealt with • **22 backyard** (AE) area of grass behind a house

Page 129

• **4 apprentice** [əˈprentɪs] young person hired for a fixed time to learn a skill and gain experience • **6 taken aback** surprised • **ebullient** [ɪˈbʊliənt] (formal) cheerful and energetic • **13 to ship** to deliver • **pissed** (vulgar) angry • **14 to exhale** to breathe out air through your nose or mouth • **sour** [ˈsaʊər] annoyed, quite angry • **15 nutjob** (coll., AE) crazy person • **18 kook** [kuːk] (coll., AE) strange and crazy person • **24 poor deer** (*Hirsch*) **antlers** (*Geweih*) **died for this shit** Mercer is being accused of killing deer to manufacture his products – cf. page p. 131, lines 19-20.

Page 130

• **2 prickly** (coll.) sensitive, easily upset • **high-handed** authoritative, arrogant • **6/7 community college** (AE) local college that offers courses that last two years, but enables students to later attend a four-year college or university for an academic degree • **8 organically sourced beef** beef that is bought from farms where cattle only eat food without chemicals and gene manipulation • **9 King Crimson** British rock band founded in 1968 • **to settle in** to relax and make yourself comfortable • **to blow s.o.'s mind** (coll., AE) to amaze s.o. • 22 **to hyperventilate** [ˌhaɪpərˈventɪleɪt] to breathe heavily because of shock or excitement

Page 131

• **7 assault** (here:) confrontation • **17 standoffish** [ˌstændˈɑːfɪʃ] cold and reserved • **19 endangered species** [ˈspiːʃiːz] specific group of animals or plants that is in danger of dying out • **25 random** chosen by chance

Page 132

• **9/10 to churn s.th. through** (fig.) to consider a lot of information quickly • **11 underachiever** s.o. who doesn't do as much as is expected • **12 smug** complacent, too satisfied with yourself • **17 gossip** *Tratsch* • **18 vast** very large • **19 to elevate s.th.** (here:) to give s.th. an apparently better level of quality that is not deserved • **hearsay** rumour • **conjecture** guess, supposition • **20 valid** correct, accepted as the truth • **21 dorky** (coll.) stupid • **22 nostril** *Nasenloch* • **24/25 calculator watch** digital watch with a built-in calculator that began to be produced in the 1970s • **28 junior high** (AE) school for students between 12 and 14

Page 133

• **2 unicorn** *Einhorn* • **4 inverted** upside down • **8 to expand** to increase in size • **9 to tear** [ter]**, tore, torn** to pull apart by force • **fatigues** [fəˈtiːgz] (AE) military clothes for manual work • **10 John Wayne** (1907 - 1979) American actor, especially famous for his roles in Westerns • **Steve McQueen** (1930 - 1980) American actor, famous for playing cool anti-heroes • **11 badass** (coll., AE) impressive, cool • **15 to plow on** (fig.) to continue in spite of difficulties • **16 feed** (here:) contribution to a social network • **to plead** to ask in an emotional or urgent manner • **17/18 junk mailer** s.o. who sends spam • **19 to unsubscribe** to remove your name from a mailing list • **20 neediness** needing attention or emotional support • **to pervade** (formal) to spread through every part of s.th. • **28 to purvey** [pərˈveɪ] (here:) to try to sell

© Westermann

Page 134

• **1 nourishing** [ˈnɜːrɪʃɪŋ] good for keeping the body healthy • **5 to push** (here:) to propagate • **6/7 to calibrate s.th.** to exactly measure the amount of s.th. for maximum effect • **7 equally addictive** (here:) causing you to become dependent on social networks as if they were drugs • **11 binge** [bɪndʒ] short period of time when you drink or eat too much • **12 hollow** empty inside • **diminished** (here:) less in importance, insignificant • **15 suburbs of Paris** i.e. the banlieues of Paris with a large majority of poor immigrants from North Africa • **16 impact** (here:) influence • **18 to eliminate** to remove • **22 to monetize s.th.** to make money from s.th. • **25 jowls** [dʒaʊlz] heavy cheeks that hang down

Point to Ponder: Comment on: "It was energizing . . . to explain it all." lines 15 – 17)

Page 135

• **12 to take to doing s.th.** (idiom) to start to do s.th. • **13 to run, ran, run errands** to take care of small tasks, to send messages, go shopping, deliver goods, etc. • **14 chicken-sauté** [soʊˈteɪ] (French) fried chicken • **15 Y** (coll.) YMCA/YWCA (Young Men's/Women's Christian Association) • **16 to sleep in** to stay overnight • 17 **leaden** [ˈledn] (fig.) slow, lacking energy • **18 WNBA** Women's National Basketball Association: professional league in North America • **19 robe** *Bademantel* • **to pilfer** to steal • **21 duct tape** (AE) *Klebeband* • **22 raccoon** [ræˈkuːn] *Waschbär* • **to extract s.th. from s.th.** to remove s.th. from of s.th. • **23 dull-witted** unable to think clearly • **reluctant to do s.th.** unwilling or hesitant to do s.th. • **24 to recline** to lie down • **on constant alert** always ready to react to s.th. • **25 given** (here:) certain

Page 136

• **1 dim** not brightly lit • **2 braid** *Zopf* • **3 to leap** (here:) to jump about • **3 to squeak** *quietschen* • **restorative** making you feel strong again • **sublime** (here:) grand • **4 Sweet Pea** garden plant that has a sweet smell – here used as a term of affection • **5 cushion** [ˈkʊʃn] pillow used for a seat or sofa • **8 faint** barely audible • **9 mother-bastard** (vulgar) (here:) expression of strong anger or annoyance • **10 trajectory** curved, forward movement • **11 fragile** [ˈfrædʒl] easily broken • **12 clenched** tightly pressed together • **15 fury** *Wut* • **18 to swat s.o.** to hit with your hand • **20 to soil yourself** (formal) to defecate or urinate in your pants • **21 to compose yourself** to calm yourself

Page 137

• **1 to grant s.o. s.th.** to be willing to give s.o. s.th. • **dignity** *Würde* • **2 to boom** to make a deep, loud sound • **6 to summon s.o.** to ask s.o. to come • **to cast s.o. out** (literary) to force s.o. to leave • **8 to scold s.o.** to speak angrily to s.o. because he or she has done s.th. wrong • **11 lecture** *Vortrag* • **12 to shoo** [ʃu] **s.o. away** to make s.o. go away by saying "shoo" • **15 to swerve off** to suddenly change direction from somewhere • **marina** [məˈriːnə] harbour for small boats • **19 trailer** (AE) mobile home (BE) • **20/21 cinder-block** building block made of cement, ashes, and sand • **24 balding** losing hair on the head • **index finger** finger next to the thumb

Page 138

• **27 to dawdle** to take your time doing s.th. • **to draw s.o./s.th. out** to get s.o./s.th. to appear or come out • **pier** [pɪr] low platform built into a body of water and joined to the land

Page 139

• **2 sole** single • **3 tidy** neat and orderly • **5 to undulate** [ˈʌndʒəleɪt] (formal) to move up and down like waves • **fathoms deep** (fig.) very deep • **8 in unison** [ˈjuːnɪsn] at the same time • **17 vessel** boat, ship • **18 to tether to s.th.** to tie to s.th. • **barge** large boat with a flat bottom to transport goods on rivers or canals • **19 jerry-rigged** built quickly and cheaply • **shelter** structure that provides protection against the weather • **20 to dismantle** to remove part by part • **21 Hooverville**, cf. below:

Hoovervilles were numerous collections of primitive buildings built by the unemployed during the Great Depression of the 1930s in the USA. The name derives from US President Herbert Hoover (1929 – 1933), who was severely criticized for his inadequate response to the Great Depression following the New York Stock Market crash of 1929.

© Westermann

• **makeshift** improvised • **refugee** [ˌrefjuˈdʒiː] *Flüchtling* • **settlement** place used for people to live on • **24 tarpaulin** [tɑːrˈpɔːlɪn] large sheet of heavy, waterproof material to cover things • **26 frayed** with the edges separated • **28 streaked** with long, thin lines of a different colour

Page 140

• **5 impeccable** [ɪmˈpekəbl] perfect • **to crane** to stetch • **10 wicked** mischievous [ˈmɪstʃɪvəs], naughty • **11 to tilt** to bend to one side • **to assess** [əˈses] **s.th./s.o.** to make a judgement about the quality of s.th./s.o. • **13 leathery** [ˈleðəri] with skin rough like leather • **14 companion** person who spends a lot of time with another person • **16 thermos™** container that keeps a liquid cold or hot • **18 matching** identical • **22 waterborne** carried by water • **24 to maneuver** [məˈnuːvər] to move carefully • **27 testily** irritably • **28 bow** [baʊ] front end of a ship or boat

Page 141

• **2 patchwork of s.th.** s.th. consisting of various sizes of material that have been fitted together • **3 plank** long, narrow, thin piece of wood used for flooring or the decks of ships • **4 to indicate s.th.** to point at s.th. with your hand or finger • **5 to vacate** (here:) to leave a seat for s.o. else to sit on • **8 tarp** (abbreviation) tarpaulin • **9 to boss s.o. around** (coll.) to tell s.o. what to do in an aggressive manner • **17 fold** *Falte* • **18 making a show of looking put-out** (coll.) purposely appearing to have had to make a great effort to do s.th. • **24 to drain** to quickly empty • **25 disapprovingly** in a manner showing you don't like what s.o. is doing

Page 142

• **4 preppy** (coll., AE) having the appearance of s.o. who went to an elite school or Ivy League college • **drone** (coll.): lazy person doesn't need to work because of coming from a wealthy family • **6 apologist** (here:) s.o. who likes to find an excuse for s.o.'s behaviour • **7 fortune-teller** s.o. who claims to be able to tell you what will happen in the future • **11 pod** (here:) small group of sea animals • **12 Golden Gate** strait connecting San Francisco Bay with the Pacific Ocean • **27 foghorn** *Nebelhorn*

Page 143

• **2 glassine** [glæˈsiːn] like thin, shiny, translucent paper used to cover books • **9 to attach s.th. to s.th.** to fasten s.th. to another thing • **11 for good** for the rest of their lives • **15 uninhabited** with no people living there • **to rise, rose, risen** (fig.) to seemingly move upwards • **mute** [mjuːt] silent • **18/19 god-forsaken** *gottverlassen* • **22/23 Lake Tahoe** freshwater lake in the Sierra Nevada in both California and Nevada • **24 aglow** [əˈgloʊ] (fig.) feeling warmth and happiness • 26 **tricolor** [ˈtraɪkʌlər] with three colours

Page 144

•**1 mark** spot on the skin • **3 arch** [ɑːrtʃ] (here:) *Fußgewölbe* • **to shrug** *die Achseln zucken* • **4 to let the matter drop** (idiom) to not continue with the subject at hand • **9 to soak** (fig.) to completely fill • **16 tsk** [ˈtəsk] sound of disapproval you make with your tongue • **20 to dip** to lower s.th. into a liquid and then quickly take it out • **21 traitor** *Verräter, -in* • **24 swell** (coll., AE) great

Page 145

• **1 crooked** *krumm* • **4 recklessly** in a manner showing no regard for danger • **spray** *Gischt* • **5 bold** fearless • **6 splash** *Spritze* • **6 free-range** (here:) out in the open and moving about in the waves • **7 caged** (here:) kept in place • **12 bash** (coll.) large party • **13 bummed** (coll., AE) disappointed • **celebr** (abbreviation) celebration • **18 asap** (abbreviation) as soon as possible • **21 on call** required to accept messages at that moment • **22 retinals** (here:) small computers that project images onto the eyes • **23 blank** empty • **24 display** screen • **25 to swirl** to move around quickly in a circle • **to flash** (here:) to show quickly • **26 quick-dissolving** (here:) quickly disappearing

Page 146

• **8 to be a cinch** [sɪntʃ] (coll.) to be s.th. easy to do • **13 stumper** (coll.) s.th. difficult to explain or understand • **13/14 to bounce s.th. up** (coll.) to quickly send s.th. • **21 pod** (here:) group that works together • **26 en masse** [ˌɑ̃ːˈmæs] (French) all together

© Westermann

Page 147

• **1 load** (here:) workload: tasks that need to be dealt with • **6 infant** [ˈɪnfənt] (formal) baby or very young child • **7 utterly** completely • **10 onboarding process** method of getting s.o. new used to working for the firm • **11 maniacally fast** (here:) incredibly hectic • **to route s.th.** to send s.th. on a particular route [ruːt] • **24 to account for s.th.** *etwas berücksichtigen* • **25 to make s.th. up to s.o.** *jdm etwas wiedergutmachen*

Page 148

• **3 available** *zugänglich* • **5 folder** *Akte* • **9 whoa** [woʊ] (usually said to a horse) Stop! • **intense** requiring very concentrated work • **12 fuel** [ˈfjuːəl] (fig.) *Kraftstoff* • **24 swamped** (coll.) overwhelmed with work • **25 shift** *Schicht* • **26 better honed** [hoʊnd] (fig.) with improved skills

Page 149

• **2 layer** (fig.) *Schicht* • **5 to hook s.o. up with s.th.** (coll.) to connect s.o. to s.th. • **7 bracelet** (here:) mini-computer worn around the wrist • **literally** really, in effect • 1**4 runaway train** (fig.) a train that is out of control • **15 contrary to** the opposite of • **assurance** [əˈʃʊrəns] statement intended to inspire confidence or give encouragement • **20 singlehandedly** all on your own without outside help • **23 thumbs-up** (fig.) sign of approval

Page 150

• **1 featuring** including as s.th. special • **2 wall-mounted** fixed to the wall • **recipe** [ˈresəpi] set of instructions that tell you how to cook or bake s.th. • **paleo** having to do with the Paleolithic diet, a diet that posits that you should only eat food that was available to humans millions of years ago • **4 to approach** to contact, to speak to • **5 fully retinal** with the eyes completely connected to mini computers • **7 medical administrative's face** *Gesicht der Sprechstundenhilfe* • **15 drawn by** attracted to • **16 thread** [θred] *Faden* • **to delineate** to indicate • **17 knob** [nɑːb] *Knauf* • **18 registering** indicating • **hairline** (fig.) very thin • **19 gap** *Lücke* • **strip** long, narrow, thin piece of s.th. • **to engrave** *eingravieren* • **20 to heal** *heilen* • **22 to float** *schweben* • **gorgeous** [ˈgɔːrdʒəs] (coll.) lovely • **24 agape** [əˈgeɪp] wide open • **25 glamorous** attractive in a way that is exciting or special • **26 luminous** [ˈluːmɪnəs] glowing • **28 ample chest** large breasts

Page 151

• **8 flaw** [flɔː] defect, imperfection • **mole** *Muttermal* • **15 wraparound** (coll.) complete and thorough, all-encompassing • **16 to square with s.th.** (coll.) to agree with s.th. • **21 intake** (here:) process of acquiring information about s.o. to be hired • **23 rotation** (here:) group that returns regularly • **24 biweekly** every two weeks • **28 to involve** to include

Page 152

• **1 to monitor** to constantly check • **variance** [ˈværiəns] change • **2 detection** discovery, determination • **to calibrate** (here:) to determine the exact amount of medication needed • **med** (abbreviation) medication • **to be on a medication** to be taking a medication • **3 as opposed to** instead of • **3/4 run you over** (fig.) doing a medical examination because of suspecting an illness • **to generate s.th.** (here:) to accumulate s.th. • **12 pattern** (here:) connections • **potential** [pəˈtenʃl] possible • **19 MRI** magnetic resonance imaging: method of examining tissues, bone structure, and inner organs • **20 to opt** to decide • **ACL** Anterior Cruciate Ligament: ligament (*Band*) in the knee • **21 previous** earlier • **27 to piece together** to seek

various bits of information in order to form a complete picture • 28 from here on out (coll.) from now on

Page 153

• **1 cognitive test** test to see how well s.o. can think logically • **2 rotating retinue** [ˈretənuː] (here:) recurring series at certain times • **4 affordable** *erschwinglich* • **7 Stage-4** (medical) cancerous growth at its most dangerous stage • **lump** (here:) swelling under the skin that might be cancerous • **8 differential** [ˌdɪfəˈrenʃl] difference in amount • **profound** (here:) large • **9 fraction** *Bruchzahl* • **10 foresight** quality of being able to consider what might happen in the future • **13 to enact** to put into

© Westermann

practice • **beyond debate** so obvious that a debate is not necessary • **14 urgency** requiring quick action • **17 vital signs** heartbeat, blood pressure, body temperature, pulse • **18 bracelet** (normally) a piece of jewelry worn around the wrist • **22 heart rate** pulse • **25 bangle** [ˈbæŋgl] piece of jewellery that is worn loosely around the wrist • **28 snug** fitting tightly

Page 154

• **6 array** range, variety • **9 dense** *dicht* • **10 smoothie** drink made of fruit or vegetables • **11 viscous** [ˈvɪskəs] *zähflüssig* • **12 to ingest** to swallow • **13 to punch** to hit with your fist • **16 to hem and haw** (coll., AE) to take a long time before deciding to do s.th. • **20 to tap s.th.** to touch s.th. lightly with you fingers • **22 flux** change • **duration** [duˈreɪʃn] length of time s.th. takes • **23 digestive efficiency** how well you digest (*verdauen*) food • **25 galvanic** having to do with the production of an electric current, which is measured in ampere • **26 amped** (coll., AE) excited • **27 adjustment** small change to improve s.th • **28 pH** a logarithmic measurement of how acidic (*säurehaltig*) s.th. is. • **sweat** [swet] *Schweiß*

Page 155

• **1 to hydrate** (here:) to drink water or other liquid • **alkaline** *basisch* • **2 posture** body position • **2 tissue** [ˈtɪʃuː] *Gewebe* • **3 step count** how many steps are taken a day • **9 second-gen** (abbreviation) second-generation • **13 omission** act of leaving s.th. out • **16 meningitis** [ˌmenɪnˈdʒaɪtɪs] serious infection of the brain • **20 STD** (abbreviation) sexually transmitted disease • **Hep C** (abbreviation) hepatitis [ˌhepəˈtaɪtɪs] C: a serious disease of the liver • **24 homogenous** [ˌhoʊməˈdʒiːniəs] all the same • **25 root** (fig.) *Würzel* • **26 to trace** *zurückführen* • **ancestry** [ˈænsestri] ancestors • **27 genome** complete set of genes of a living thing

Page 156

• **3 exposed to** (here:) affected by • **5 takeaway** the conclusions that can be drawn • **6 to track s.th./s.o.** to follow the development of s.th./s.o. • **9/10 engineer** (here:) social scientist • **10 evidently** clearly, obviously • **11 deviation** *Abweichung* • **16 marquee** [mɑːrˈkiː] (AE) entrance to a theatre or cinema displaying in bright, colourful lights the name of the film or play being shown and the participating actors • **chart** diagram with statistical information • **17 delicately** (here:) carefully paying attention to small details • **to render** to depict • **18 EKG** (abbreviation) electrocardiogram • **20 98.6** 98.6 Fahrenheit = 37 Celsius • **aggregate** (here:) average • **22 prompt** icon on a computer screen to indicate what should be done next • **26 BMI** (abbreviation) body mass index – a measurement to determine if s.o. is under- or overweight

Page 157

• **6 median** [ˈmiːdiən] middle value of a series of numbers arranged in order of size •**16 period** menstruation • **24 prescription** *Rezept* • **27 nope** (coll.) no

Page 158

• **12 stylus** special pen used to write on a computer screen • **to hover** [ˈhʌvər] *schweben* • **13 to knock the wind out of s.o.** to make it difficult for s.o. to breathe because of s.th. unpleasant • **15 tilting her close** causing her to lean towards her • **faintly** slightly • **floral** like flowers • **there there** (coll.) expression used to comfort s.o. or tell s.o. not to be upset **16 to heave** to rise • **18 release** *Befreiung* • **19 fatigue** [fəˈtiːg] exhaustion • **21 to stroke** *streicheln* • **22 soul-flaying** (fig.) causing a sense of hopelessness and despair

Page 159

• **12 shrub** bush • **15 filthier** (here:) more and more sexually explicit • **17 phallic** in the shape of a penis • **21 kickoff** (coll.) campaign • **22 deadpan** purposely showing no emotion • **24 bit** (here:) attempt at being comical

Page 160

• **3 go-to** (coll.) reliable person to seek help or advice from on a regular basis • **5 grain** *Körnchen* • **8 scenario** [səˈnærioʊ] (here:) possible course of action • **9 to overlap with s.th.** (here:) to be of common interest to s.th. • **23 juicy** (coll.) complicated • **24 to fuck around** (vulgar) to play around • **25 dorm** (abbreviation) dormitory • **28 to squeeze** (here:) to hug

© Westermann

Page 161

• **1 stunned** amazed, shocked • **2 coverage** (here:) what an insurance policy includes • **4 to diminish** (formal) to lessen, to worsen • **5 to eliminate s.th.** (here:) to make s.th. impossible • **7 to buzz** to make a low, continuous sound • **8 ninja** (Japan) in former times a specially trained person in the martial arts, often engaged to secretly assassinate people • **12 to entice** *locken* • **14 vicinity** nearby area • **blighted** run-down • **15 server farm** (computer) collection of server computers in one building • **bold** (here:) impressive and innovative • **16 unprecedented** never having existed before • **beyond LEED** more than the rating system of LEED requires – **LEED** (Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design), an organization which determines whether a building or home meets the standards of green buildings and homes, to ensure the use of renewable energy for the protection of the environment • **17 to go, went, gone off** (here:) to buzz • **19 big deal** (coll., AE) (here:) s.th. complicated or difficult to organise • **20 to twist a few arms** (fig.) to aggressively persuade people to do s.th.

Notice how FACEBOOK (renamed Meta) is planning to develop a similar community to **The Circle**.

Page 162

• **2 c'mon** (coll.) come on, i.e. (here:) please • **credit** recognition for having accomplished s.th. • **3 briskly** quickly • 7 **biggest deal** (coll. AE) matter of great importance • **8 to dictate terms** to determine the conditions • **14 whooping** [ˈhuːpɪŋ] loud cry of joy • **15 savior** *Retter* • **17 humbled** *gedemütigt* • **to lean on s.o.** to depend on s.o. for support • **18 messed-up** broken, chaotic • **21 I swear to god** I really mean it • **26 poetry slam** competition of poets who read their poems to an audience to see whose poem is the best

Page 163

• **1 to RSVP to s.th.** to confirm that you accept an invitation • **2 goat** *Ziege* • **4 vaginal mutilation** female circumcision, removal of part of the female genitals as practised in some countries in Africa and Asia • **Malawi** country in south-east Africa • **6 itinerary** [aɪˈtɪnəreri] planned route or journey • **7 to obliterate** to completely destroy • **7 Funky** (cool) **Arse** (*Arsch*) **Whole Circus** fictitious name • **9 review** *Kritik* • **stellar** (coll.) excellent • **10 to match s.th.** to be identical to s.th. • **euphoria** [juːˈfɔːriə] great feeling of joy • **14 to fly, flew, flown** (here:) to rush • **15 threaded in gold** (fig.) with thin lines of gold • **17 to glitter** to shine brightly with small flashes of reflected light • **headdress** special covering for the head • 19 **baton** [ˈbætɒ̃] short, light stick used by marchers or an orchestra conductor • **20 minimal** just a few • **prop** object used by actors on the stage or by circus performers • **22 to ring, rang, rung** (here:) to surround • **to emit** to send out • **23 to capture** (here:) to focus on and film • **24 proceedings** the events unfolding • **24/25 cautiously** carefully • • **27 underway** taking place, proceeding • **27/28 discernible** [dɪˈsɜːrnəbl] noticeable

Page 164

• 1 **threadbare** [ˈθredber] old and thin, worn out • **2 to revel in s.th.** to enjoy s.th. very much • **humility** *Demut* • **4 to obscure** to hide • **5 to stumble** to walk with difficulty, almost falling • **10 thunderous** (fig.) exciting • **15 to affect** (formal) to pretend • **air** (here:) appearance • **16 decay** [dɪˈkeɪ] *Verfall, Verwesung* • **18/19 reveler** person noisily having fun with other people, often consuming a lot of alcohol • **19 incongruous** [ɪnˈkɑːŋgruəs] not suitable in a certain situation • **amid** amongst • **20 considered** planned • **25 tone and tenor** style and general character • **27 attendance** presence at an event • **28 beverage** [ˈbevərɪdʒ] (formal) s.th. to drink

Page 165

• **1/2 handlebar mustache** [məˈstɑːʃ] *Schnauzer* • **3 unsteady** staggering, unable to walk properly • **to grasp** to understand • **5 blade** *Klinge* • **6 to freeze, froze, frozen** to suddenly stop moving • **12 wiry** [ˈwaɪəri] *drahtig* • **15 to assure yourself** to make sure • **18 calligraphic** (here:) elegant • **19 plain** simple • **V-neck** opening for the neck in the shape of a "v" at the front • **20 to strike, struck, struck s.o.** to give s.o. a certain impression • **22 to assess** *abschätzen* • **25 to tangle with s.o.** (coll.) to get involved in a fight with s.o. • **27 to twirl** to twist around

© Westermann

Page 166

• **6 Constantin Brancusi**, cf. below:

Constantin Brancusi (1876 – 1957) was a Romanian sculptor, painter and photographer who lived most of his life in France. A pioneer of modernism, he became one of the most influential sculptors of the 20th century.

• **7 Roman arch** (fig.) large and rounded • **snout** [snaʊt] long, projecting nose such as a pig has • **9 court jester** *Hofnarr* • **royalty** the king/queen and his/her court • **10 tiptoe** the front part of the foot • **12 en route** [ˌɑːn ˈruːt] (French) on the way • **tapas** [ˈtæpæs] (Spanish) small amount of a Spanish dish served at bars • **27 to hang, hung, hung out with s.o.** (coll.) to spend time with s.o.

Page 167

• **4 grace** elegance • **fluidly** smoothly • **11 bough** [baʊ] (literary) main branch of a tree • **trunk** *Stamm* • **23 to untangle** (coll.) to deal with a complication • **regulatory snafu** (coll.) confusion or error about a regulation – snafu is an acronym for "Situation Normal: All Fucked Up", which originated in the military during World War II **24 • intriguing** [ɪnˈtriːgɪŋ] very interesting

Page 168

• **12 granpa chaser** (coll.) young woman interested in older men • **15 to swear** [swer], **swore**, **sworn** *schwören* • **18 temporary contract** *Zeitvertrag* • **20 coy** [kɔɪ] pretending to be shy and innocent

Page 169

• **1 to roam** to walk around an area without any particular aim • **2 musty** smelling old, damp • **3 cardboard box** *Karton* • **6 to cash in** to turn a financial instrument into cash • **401 (k)** in the USA: a government approved retirement plan that is paid into by the employer and employee – it can also include investments • **11 ése** (Spanish) this one • **13 preliminary** initial • **14 directory** *Verzeichnis* • **16 surgical** (here:) precise • **23 grove** area of land with fruit trees • **24 shuttle** transportation continuously provided back and forth between two stops • **25 off** (here:) away • **27 grope** act of groping (*grabschen*) • **28 f**lattening (here:) pressing

Page 170

• **2 bold** (here:) showing no hesitation • **sacrum** *Kreuzbein* • **to fan down** (fig.) to spread down like a fan (*Fächer*) • **12 to retreat** to move away • **14 to ripen** [ˈraɪpən] to become ripe (*reif*) • **16 to get hold of s.th.** (idiom) to manage to find s.o. • **20 moderately** *mäßig* • **hot water** (coll., AE) trouble • **21 to involve s.th.** to have to do with s.th. • **23 regulatory** having to do with making sure regulations are followed • **24 facial rec** (abbreviation) facial recognition: computer system that scans s.o.'s face or photo in order to determine this person's identity • **26 to kid** (coll.) to joke

Page 171

• **7 slight** *gering* • **8 infiltrator** person who becomes a member of an organization for subversive purposes • **low-grade** of low quality • **molester** person who makes sexual advances • **9 to post** to inform on the internet • **stalker** person who watches and follows another person in a strange and annoying manner • **11 blogger** person who writes a blog, i.e. regular articles about the person's opinions or experiences published on the internet • **12 to skulk around** to secretly move about • **12/13 storage room** room to store things in • **14 freaky** (coll.) crazy, strange • **15 nefarious** [nɪˈferiəs] criminal • **17 guile** [gaɪl] dishonesty • **19 reliable** *zuverlässig* • **21 grating** irritating • **exasperating** [ɪgˈzæspəreɪtɪŋ] causing extreme irritation and annoyance • **22 presumably** *angeblich* • **23 jolt** abrupt feeling • **frisson** [friːˈsɔːn] (French) excitement

Page 172

• **1 visage** [ˈvɪzɪdʒ] (literary) face • **5 playlist** list of songs • **apology** statement saying you are sorry about s.th. • **woe** [woʊ] condition of deep suffering from misfortune or grief • **8/9 to approximate** to do s.th. nearly the same • **9 to apply to s.o.** to use on s.o. • **10 to approach** to come near • **12/13 to be in touch with s.o.** (idiom) to contact s.o. • **17 to lock s.o. in** (here:) to find all the necessary information about s.o. • **21 to obviate** (formal) to remove the need for s.th. • **22 currency** *Währung* • **to cancel** *stornieren*

© Westermann

Page 173

• **1 to festoon** [feˈstuːn] to decorate • **2 aide** [eɪd] assistant • **3 ticker** line of text that passes along a screen • **4/5 to hiss** *zischen* • **5 shush** sound made to tell people to be quiet • **volume** *Lautstärke* • **7/8 Antitrust Task Force,** cf. below:

The Senator is referring to a committee that was formed to determine whether a company had become so dominant as to prevent any kind of fair competition. The main statutes dealing with monopolies in the USA are the Sherman Act of 1890, the Clayton Act of 1914, and the Federal Trade Commission Act of 1914.
In fact, the concerns of the US Congress over the monopolistic practices of Big Tech have led to ongoing antitrust investigations from the Department of Justice and Federal Trade Commission in the United States and the European Commission. Laws to restrain Big Tech have been passed by the EU. These laws include the European privacy law of 2018 and more recently the Digital Markets Act. It remains to be seen if the US Congress will follow with similar laws.

• **9 Justice** (Department), cf. below:

The United States Department of Justice is responsible for the enforcement of the law and for the administration of justice in the United States. It administers the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) and the Drug Enforcement Administration (DEA). It can also represent the United States government in legal matters before the Supreme Court.

• **11 Standard Oil**, cf. below:

In the case of ***Standard Oil Co. of New Jersey v. United States*** (1911), the Supreme Court of the United States found Standard Oil Co. of New Jersey guilty of monopolizing the petroleum industry. Its decision was based on the Sherman Act. The company was divided up into separate firms.

• **AT & T, cf. below:**

American Telephone and Telegraph: communications firm that had a telephone monopoly in the US until it was broken up into independent telephone companies by a ruling of a Federal Court in 1982 in an antitrust lawsuit (*Klage*).

• **12 to stifle** [ˈstaɪfl] to prevent from happening • **15 throng** (literary) crowds of people • **16 consensus** general opinion of a group of people • **17 outside-the-mainstream** (fig.) not the usual or conventional • **18 war in Iraq**, cf. below:

The war in Iraq (2003 – 2011) war initiated by President George W. Bush on the basis of the erroneous belief that the dictator of Iraq had weapons of mass destruction. The war is considered to be an example of failed American foreign policy.

• **war in Afghanistan**, cf. below;

After 9-11, President George W. Bush ordered the invasion of Afghanistan in the hope of removing the Taliban and capturing Osama bin Laden. He was killed in 2011 by a special American military operation. The war – considered a disaster – continued until the withdrawal of American and NATO troops in 2021. The Taliban then quickly took over.

• **19 traction** support • **crusade** (fig.) *Kreuzzug* • 20 **both sides of the aisle** [aɪl] (fig.) both the Democrats and Republicans in Congress • **21 virtually** almost • **22 donation** *Spende* • **23 liberal** (AE) left-wing • **23/24 Republican ranks** (fig.) elected members of the Republican party • **26 off-the-cuff** (fig.) without previous thought, spontaneous • **27 search market** firms that provide the same service as GOOGLE, which is dominant in the search market. • **28 free-mail** providing free e-mail service • **text servicing** texting (*SMS*) service, a type of service which has now been replaced with more sophisticated with services such as WhatsApp™, which is owned by Meta (formerly Facebook)

© Westermann

Page 174

• **1 perspective** viewpoint • **testament** proof • **2 insane** crazy • **14 to convey** [kənˈveɪ] (here:) to suggest • **17 taco** fried tortilla filled with meat, beans, vegetables, etc. • **18 gentlemen caller** (old-fashioned, humorous) man trying to start a relationship with a woman • **23 *The Shining*** 1980 horror film produced and directed by Stanley Kubrick • **Jack Nicholson** (1937 -) American actor – he is the main protagonist in *The Shining*. The young woman he holds in his arms does indeed turn into a corpse (dead body). • **encounter** meeting by chance • **25 elderly** old

Page 175

• **18 to probe into s.o.'s eyes** to look searchingly into s.o.'s eyes • **21 to brighten** to look more cheerful • **22 to square s.th. with s.th.** (fig.) to determine how two situations or facts combine with each other

Page 176

• **2 to appreciate** [əˈpriːʃieɪt] **s.th.** *etwas zu schätzen wissen* • **4 clock-in, clock-out** (fig.) working only for a specified time and not more • **13 crucial** [ˈkruːʃl] important • **19 range** *Bereich*

Page 177

• **1 mandatory** required • **6 to bury** (fig.) *begraben* • **7 aloe** [ˈæloʊ] tropical plant used in medicine • **10 condescending** *herablassend* • **11 to stock** to supply • **12 to curate** to organize, to administer, to select • **26 facility** *Einrichtung* • **26 whirlwind** [ˈwɜːrlwɪnd] (fig.) confused rush

Page 178

• **2 minor** not important • **4 tissue** [ˈtɪʃuː] *Taschentuch* • **5 smudge** dirty mark • **17 bump** (coll.) any kind of reaction • **18 to be caught up in s.th.** (idiom) to be suddenly preoccupied by s.th. • **20 to value** [ˈvæljuː] **s.th**. to consider s.th. valuable or important • **22 predicated on** based on • **to a large extent** for the most part • **26 honorable** *ehrenwürdig* • **28 to that end** in this regard

Page 179

• **2 to extend s.th.** (here:) to continue with s.th. • **21 strand** *Strähne* • **check-in** act of determining how s.o. is doing • **25 enigma** (here:) mysterious person • **28 shrouded** (covered) **in mystery** (fig.) completely mysterious

Page 180

• **6 in terms of** with respect to • **10 to swipe** (here:) to slide to a new page or place on a tablet • **19 exemplary** [ɪgˈzempləri] excellent • **25 cog** (fig.) small wheel in a machine • **28 to let s.o. go** (coll.) to fire s.o.

Page 181

• **1 pained** showing displeasure • **blip** (fig.) temporary problem • **2 to mesh with s.th.** (fig.) to fit together with s.th. • **5 at play** (fig.) currently of importance or to be considered • **7 optional** voluntary • **10 inadvertently** [ˌɪnədˈvɜːrtəntli] unintentionally • **11 distress** pain or suffering • **26 related to s.th.** having to do with s.th.

Page 182

• **7 to table s.th.** to continue to discuss s.th. at a later time • **8 instructive** *lehrreich* • **to be aware of s.th.** to have knowledge of s.th. • **9 to acknowledge** to admit • **benefit** useful result, advantage • **17 to glean** (fig.) to obtain • **20 maniac** [ˈmeɪniæk] crazy person • **not very present** (here:) concentrating more on my problems • **24 to tap a flurry** to hurriedly tap several times • **27 to put a pin in s.th.** (fig.) to keep s.th. in mind that will be discussed again later

Page 183

• **7 to benefit from s.th.** to profit or gain advantage from s.th. • **10 pseudo** [ˈsuːdoʊ] false, not real • **14 beneficial** [ˌbenɪˈfɪʃl] advantageous, helpful • **18 basically** essentially • **to go blank** (here:) to not be able to be found anywhere • **20 number-geeky** (coll., AE) overly concerned about numbers

© Westermann

Page 184

• **6 to gush** (here:) to make a great display of excitement • **6 WNBA** The Women's National Basketball Association: women's professional basketball league in the US • **9 bewildered** confused • **10 to step in** (here:) to interrupt a conversation and add a comment • **14 visibly** noticeably • **shaken** (fig.) upset • **15/16 to mutter** to say in a quiet voice that is difficult to understand • **21 to warrant** to justify • **22 passionate** strongly enthusiastic

Page 185

• **1 palm** the inner part of the hand below the fingers • **4 forefront** leading position • **15 dual** (here:) both at the same time • **25 intently** with great concentration • **26 smile** (here:) symbol of a smile used as a reaction on Zing

Page 187

• **1 naturalist** person who studies plants and animals • **Coast Guard** *Küstenwache* • **3 maddening** making you intensely angry • **4 shortsightedness** (fig.) *Kurzsichtigkeit* • **7 to soften** to become less angry • **9 integral** essential • **10 involuntary** done suddenly without intention • **scoff** expression of mockery • **12 fiery** [ˈfaɪəri] showing great emotion, especially anger • 26 **to plummet** (fig.) to show great disappointment

Page 188

• **3/4 ostensibly** [ɑːˈstensəbli] seemingly, supposedly • **7 engaged with s.o.** involved with s.o. • **10 levity** [ˈlevəti] light-heartedness • **15 delicate** (here:) *peinlich* • **19 self-esteem** *Selbstwertgefühl* • **21 reluctant** hesitant • **22 valid** acceptable, sensible

Page 189

• **2 to stem** to originate • **6 off-balance** (fig.) *aus dem Gleichgewicht gekommen* • **7 pliant** [ˈplaɪənt] giving in too easily • **9 empowered** (here:) entitled, confident • **10 to wag** to move rapidly from side to side • **11 concerning** worrying • **13 to solve s.o.** (here:) to determine s.o.'s personality • **18 to consume** *verbrauchen* • **20 to hook s.o. up** to connect s.o. to s.th./s.o. • **23 to scold** *rügen* • **25 bare** (here:) mere • **to disgust** *verabscheuen* • 26 **deadbeat** lazy, socially undesirable person

Page 190

• **1 coveted** [ˈkʌvətɪd] desired by many • **3 to skate through** (fig.) to work without much effort • **6 to abuse** to misuse • **10 a slap on the wrist** (fig.) not a severe criticism • **12 to embark** (here:) to begin with a new project • **flurry** sudden burst • **21 to provide** (here:) to contribute • **22 in beta** (computer programming) in the testing stage • **23 plateau** [plæˈtoʊ] high level • **25 account holder** *Konto-inhaber* • **27 to catch, caught, caught fire** (fig.) to suddenly become very popular

Page 191

• **1 profound** (here:) intense • **accomplishment** successful achievement • **2 to accompany** *begleiten* • **in short order (fig.)** immediately afterwards • **5 access code** code that allows you to enter s.th. • **7 immaculate** extremely clean • **8 awash in s.th.** (fig.) completely filled with s.th. • **fixtures** objects fixed to the wall • **8/9 radiant** passing through the air in waves • **9 sheet** *Bettlacken* • **pillowcase** *Kopfkissenbezug* • **crisp** fresh and firm • **to crackle** *knistern* • **11 spring** *Feder* • **foam** *Schaumgummi* • **12 pliant** (here:) *biegsam* • **14 down** small feathers • **to pledge** to promise • **19 to tuck yourself in** to cover yourself with a blanket and go to sleep • **21 closet** small room built into a wall to store things • **dresser** (AE) chest of drawers (BE) • **24 capri pants** close-fitting women's pants that end above the ankle • **pristine** [ˈprɪstiːn] fresh and clean • **sink** *Waschbecken* • **25 moisturizer** lotion to make the skin moist *(feucht*) • **local** (here:) from a nearby firm

Page 192

• **1 fruits** (fig.) results • **labors** *Anstrengungen* • **evident** readily apparent • **7/8 to graduate from s.th.** (here:) to leave a certain position in a firm and attain a higher position • **13 to crack through** (here:) to rise above a rating • **15 maniacal in s.th.** obsessed by s.th. • **15/16 corresponding** similar in function or character • **20 striver** Streber • **21 feverishly** with intense activity • **22 spot** place, position • **23 delicious** (here:) extremely appealing • **24 accolade** [ˌækəˈleɪd] expression of strong praise • **25 in particular** especially • **27 revelation** realization

© Westermann

Page 193

• **1 unconscious** (here:) sleeping • **2 to fortify** to give strength • **gummy worms** gelatine-based chewable candy • 3 **to kick in** (coll.) to begin to have an effect • **invincible** not able to be defeated • **10/11 in command of s.th.** in control of s.th. • **11 stats** (abbreviation) statistics • **12 to track** to closely follow • **22 overall** total • **25 outstanding** (here:) still waiting to be processed

Page 194

• **8 news alert** notification of an important event in the news • **9 to favor** to prefer • **17 with ease** easily • **17/18 properly hydrated** drinking enough fluids • **22 calamity** disastrous event • **25 to call s.o. on the carpet** (fig.) to criticize s.o. for having done s.th. wrong • **26 consequence** *Folge*

Page 195

• **8 interloper** [ˈɪntərloʊpər] s.o. who enters a building or property without permission • **9 to dodge a bullet** (fig.) to avoid a catastrophe • **10 espionage** spying • **13 widow** *Witwe* • **21 antiquated** obsolete, old • **burden** *Last* • **26 stressor** s.th. that causes stress • **despair** *Verzweiflung* • **27 rip** *Riss* • **28 tear** [ter] rip

Page 196

• **7/8 to redouble** to make twice as strong • 12 **to curse** *verfluchen* • **14 tentative** hesitant • **20 pursuer** s.o. who is following another person for the purpose of overtaking or capturing this person • **25 subtle** [ˈsʌtl] hardly noticeable

Page 197

• **1 to customize** to alter according to your own specifications • **3/4 papier-mâché** [ˌpæpjeɪ məˈʃeɪ] (French) *Pappmaschee* • **4/5 bespectacled** (formal) wearing glasses • **9 sake** [ˈsɑːki] Japanese alcoholic drink made from rice • **10 tinted pink** with a faint pink colour • **12 brand** *Marke* • **14 shot** small amount of an alcoholic drink • **17 come-down** (coll.) time to fall asleep • **24 to get, got, gotten over s.th.** to cease to admire • **waist** [weɪst] *Taille* • **28 bow** [boʊ] curved piece of wood with a tight string attached to the ends to shoot an arrow

Page 198

• **1 to trace** to follow the shape or outline of s.th. • **7 to mime** to act out an action without words • **9 to flee, fled, fled** *fliehen* • **10 clumsy** *unbeholfen* • **12 erratic** wildly irregular • **14 struck dumb** unable to speak because of surprise or shock • **16 extant** currently existing • **23 musician-in-residence** musician given room and board and a salary by a firm or university and required to perform on demand or give courses • **25 out** (here:) available to the public • **27 to release** to make available to the public

Page 199

• **1 delicate** [ˈdelɪkət] (here:) light and pleasant • **2/3 luminescence** [ˌluːmɪˈnesns] low-temperature emission of light • **3 to cast** (here:) to place • **9 to put s.th.** (here:) to express s.th. • **11/12 foster family** family that raises a child who is not theirs by birth • **17 glimpse** quick look • **modest** *bescheiden* • **18 amber-lit** lit up with a brown-yellow light • **19 blurry** not clear or sharp • **cropped from the frames** cut out from the frames (*Rahmen*) • **23 frames** (here:) *Brillengestell* • **26 prominent** large

Page 200

• **10 no clue** no idea • **12 exteriors** (here:) outside walls, area around the house • **13 landmark** *Wahzeichen* • **15 foster care way** manner of a foster family • **18 deal** agreement • **21 to track s.o. down** to search and find s.o.

Page 201

• **3 soul** (here:) Black • **5/6 facial recognition** computer program that is able to identify a person by scanning a face • **9 match** (here:) a successful recognition • **12 to leaf** to turn over the pages of a book, magazine, etc. • **13 to flank** to be at either side • **16 to coerce** [koʊˈɜːrs] **s.o. into doing s.th.** (formal) to force s.o. to do s.th. • **17 to initiate** [ɪˈnɪʃieɪt] (formal) to begin • **19 surge** [sɜːrdʒ] sudden increase • **20 to be tough** [tʌf] on s.o. to be harsh, firm with s.o. • **23 to go nuts** (here:) to increase rapidly

© Westermann

Page 202

• **8 to labor** (here:) to begin, act or perform with difficulty • **9 fold** *Falte* • **10 buckle** *Schnalle* • **18 to strain** to push hard against s.th. • **19 corny** (coll.) overly sentimental, tiresomely simple • **21/22 to send s.o. over the edge** (here:) to cause an orgasm • **23 to lunge** to make a sudden forward movement • **24 to struggle with s.th.** to have difficulties accomplishing s.th. • **25 thigh** [θaɪ] *Oberschenkel* • **27 to double over** to bend together • **to jerk** to move with a sudden, sharp movement • **to crumple** to collapse

Page 203

• **1 hiked up** (coll.) pulled up • **crotch** (here:) genitals • **exposed** open to view • **2 log** length of a tree trunk • **to douse** [daʊs] to pour a lot of water over a burning fire to put it out • **6 rogue** [roʊg] (here:) mischievous, naughty • **synapse** [ˈsaɪnæps] connection between two nerve cells • **12 unappealing** not attractive or pleasant • **14/15 propped upright** leant against s.th. and therefore in a vertical position • **20 to shove s.th.** to push s.th. in a rough way • **25 to delete** *löschen*

Page 204

• **2 to advertise** (here:) to show s.th. to many other people • **5 stud** (fig.) attractive man who has many sexual partners • **6 memento** [məˈmentoʊ] s.th. that serves as a reminder of a past event • **20 to freak** (coll.) to become extremely upset • **21 to weep** *heulen* • **24 handjob** sexual stimulation by manipulating with the hand

Page 205

• **3 address** speech • **4 to involve** to have to do with s.th. • **5 niche** [niːʃ] area of expertise • **9 markedly** noticeably • **12 flawless** perfect • **15 to advocate** to support • **19 invaluable** extremely useful • **asset** s.th. of great value • **23 bald** with no hair on the head • **24 device** *Gerät*

Page 206

• **1 to combat s.th.** to fight against s.th. • **2 back-room political deal** (fig.) political agreement made in secret without the public knowing about it • **2/3 Sunshine Laws** US freedom of access laws that permit citizens of the US to have access to information about proceedings relating to regulations and laws • **3 transcript** written record of what was said at a meeting or in court • **6 embroiled** [ɪmˈbrɔɪld] (formal) involved • **11 to murmur** to speak in a soft voice that is difficult to understand • **11/12 fed off it** i.e., made use of the reaction from the audience to increase the effectiveness of his speech • **12 approval** favourable opinion • **13 to reveal** (here:) to expose, to let s.th. secret be known to the public • **14 unsavory** [ʌnˈseɪvəri] unpleasant • **17 to bust** (coll.) to suddenly arrest • **18 under investigation** subject to an official examination to determine if the law has been broken • **19 ethical violation** unethical activity against the law • **20 creepy** (coll.) weird • **23 occupation** job, profession • **23 feces** [ˈfiːsiːz] (formal) excrement • **24 senior citizen** *Rentner, -in*

Page 207

• **1 to address s.th.** to deal with s.th. • **2 district** (here:) *Wahlbezirk* • **3 stout** [staʊt] rather fat • **3/4 floral** with a flower pattern • **the wings** either side of a stage not open to view to the audience • **5 scattered** spread over a wide area • **7 hug** [hʌg] *Umarmung* • **8 clasped** held tightly together • **8/9 civics refresher** a course designed to remind participants how the government functions • **9 Congresswoman** (AE) a female member of the House of Representatives in the US Congress • **17 ultimate** best and final • **21 entwined** (here:) with the fingers folded into each other • **22 to sweep, swept, swept your eyes** to move your eyes in an arc • **27 dime** (fig.) money • **ad hoc** (Latin) only as the situation arises, not on regular basis

Page 208

• **2 councilperson** person who is a member of a town or city council • **3 degree** amount • **access** *Zugang* • **6 tryst** [trɪst] secret meeting of lovers • **7 misdeed** wrongdoing • **official** (here:) politician • **9 citizenry** the citizens of a country • **deplorable** scandalous, terrible • **11 smattering** small amount • **16 at large** as a whole • **18 vigor** [ˈvɪgər] enthusiasm • **20 illumination** (here:) transparency • **24 constituent** voter in an election district • **27 round of applause** a show of approval by means of clapping

© Westermann

Page 209

• **1 whistle** [ˈwɪsl] high sound made by forcing air through rounded lips • **to roar** to shout loudly • **7 to broadcast** [ˈbrɔːdkæst] to send out or make public via radio, TV, or internet • **9 to indulge s.o.** to satisfy s.o.'s desire • **18 to drown s.o. out** (fig.) to be so loud that a person cannot be heard when speaking • **20 to bow** [baʊ] *sich beugen* • **21 posture** certain body position • **22 to gesture** [ˈdʒestʃər] to make a movement with your hands or body to indicate s.th.

Page 210

• **4 stage-left** the left side of the stage as seen by an actor/actress facing the audience • **9 to grin** *grinsen* • **10 to go forth** (literary) (here:) to go out in the world, cf. 1 Kings 19:11, John 8:12 • **12 to be swarmed with people** to be surrounded by large numbers of people • **13 to entertain** (here:) to consider • **notion** idea • **15 shredded** cut into small pieces • **pork** *Schweinefleisch* • **17 to make it down** (coll.) to arrive • **on a deadline** (fig.) required to complete s.th. by a certain time • **18 to whine about s.th.** (fig.) to continuously complain about s.th. in an annoying manner • **19 vaguely** [ˈveɪgli] in a manner that is not clear or definite • **20 cactus, cacti** [ˈkæktaɪ] (plural) • **sandstone** stone consisting of quartz sand held together with silica or calcium carbonate • **24 gathering** meeting • **24/25 law enforcement** having to do with police work

Page 211

• **1 to fade** to become less bright • **to make way for s.th.** (here:) to allow s.th. to replace s.th. • **2 bags** (here:) *Ringe* • **4 customary** usual • **5 sleeve** *Ärmel* • **7 to hush** to become quiet • **25 stairwell** *Treppenhaus* • **to meander** [miˈændər] to walk slowly, seemingly without purpose

Page 212

• **3 to recoil** [rɪˈkɔɪl] to quickly move your body away from s.th./s.o. • **12 to let on** (coll.) to admit • **16 to enumerate** to list • **permutation** statistical variation • **18 to screw up** (coll.) to make a mess of s.th. • **21 clue** *Hinweis* • **22 snug** close-fitting • **24 to maneuver** [məˈnuːvər] **your way into s.th.** (here:) to enter s.th. with difficulty • **25 inverted** upside down

Page 213

• **1 luminous** [ˈluːmɪnəs] (here:) illustrious, famous • **9 supervisor** administrator in charge of a group • **19 PR** Public Relations • **23 not all there** (coll.) absentminded, slightly crazy • **24 barely** *kaum* • **to tether** (fig.) to tie to a post • **much less** (here:) even less likely **26 sincere** honest, with genuine intentions • **clear-eyed** mentally alert

Page 214

• **2 to scratch** *kratzen* • **5 savant** (formal) person of great learning • **10 refreshment** s.th. small to eat and drink • **12 hideout** place to hide so that no one can find you • **18 submersible** [səbˈmɜːrsəbl] submarine • **21 craft** boat • **Marianas Trench** the deepest part of the world's oceans, located in the western Pacific Ocean • **28 patented** (an invention) protected by law from being copied • **secure** *sicher*

Page 215

• **1 vessel** ship, boat • **6 to look askance at s.o.** to look sideways at s.o. as an expression of doubt or distrust • **7 prohibitive** (here:) exorbitant, much too high • **13 two-fisted** (fig.) full of energy, tensed • **22 momentous** important, historic • **28 to drain** to empty • **to concern** to worry

Page 216

• **2 to change tacks** (fig.) to change the direction of conversation • **2/3 intimidating** frightening or threatening • **7 feed** (here:) the video being produced at that moment • **8 to mingle** to move among people and speak to them • **12 brow** forehead • **furrowed** with deep lines • **16 to down** to drink quickly • **17 to follow suit** (fig.) to do the same thing as someone else has done • **18 tipsy** (coll.) slightly drunk • **19 to ensue** [ɪnˈsuː] (formal) to follow • **24 to store** *speichern* • **27 nimble** able to move easily and quickly • **28 spidery** [ˈspaɪdəri] like the legs of a spider (*Spinne*)

© Westermann

Page 217

• **9 flight** set of stairs between two floors • **10 basement** *Kellerräume* • **to trust s.o.** *jdm vertrauen* • **12 wall-mounted** attached to the wall • **pad** soft, thick piece of material • **15 to release** (here:) to open • **16 giddy** light-heartedly, silly • **intrigued** [ɪnˈtri:gd] very interested • **17 to measure** [ˈmeʒər] *abmessen* (fig.) • **18 labyrinth** [ˈlæbərɪnθ] • **21 cumbersome** [ˈkʌmbərsəm] difficult to carry • **26 anarchic** [əˈnɑ:rkɪk] completely chaotic • **streak** an aspect of s.o.'s character • **27 to abandon** to leave behind • **to amount to s.th.** to be the same as s.th. • **grand** (here:) unusual, significant

Page 218

• **1 muffled** (here:) suppressed • **5 dimly lit** poorly lit • **to slope** to move downwards • **6 apparent** perceptible, noticeable • **8 briskly** energetically • **15 calculation** consideration, thought • **20 all-encompassing** including everything • **23 spacecraft** spaceship • **to be rumored to be s.th.** to be reported to be s.th. without knowing all the facts • **24 to embed** to fix firmly into s.th. • **28 but for** except for • **trained on** aimed at

Page 219

• **2 pipe** *Rohr* • **3 elaborate** complicated • **grid** *Raster* • **4 Donald Judd** (1928 - 1994) American artist associated with minimalism • **5 alight** (here:) showing happiness • **9 passingly** superficially • **12 heft** (here:) profundity, deepness of thought • **19 in retreat** (here:) becoming less • **21 storage unit** device for storing s.th.

Page 220

• **1 raw data** data that has been acquired but not processed • **scenario** [səˈnærioʊ] (here:) possible application • **capacity** ability • **2 to map** to chart, to sort • **to correlate s.th. with s.th.** to determine if there is a connection between one thing and another • **5/6 exponentially** (here:) a great deal more • **6 layered** with many layers (*Schicht*) • **consumer** *Verbraucher, -in* • **9 to scatter** to spread over an area • **10 plot** (here:) a piece of land where s.o. is buried • **15 apparatus** [ˌæpəˈrætəs] complicated device • **18 to dominate** *beherrschen* • **19 to step up** (here:) to appear • **to assign** [əˈsaɪn] **s.th**. **to s.o.**: *jdm etwas zuweisen* • **21 light-headed** giddy • **24 to opt to do. s.th.** to choose to do s.th. • **25 to beg** to ask earnestly

Page 221

• **2 hum** *Brummen* • **7 to drench s.th.** to make s.th. completely wet • **12 ephemeral** [ɪˈfemərəl] (formal) existing only for a short time • **13/14 to teeter** to stand unsteadily as if about to fall • **17 tentatively** hesitantly • **19 to pop** to cause s.th. to suddenly lose air with a loud noise • **inanimate** lacking any sign of life • **stunned** overwhelmed, shocked • **20 bundle** a number of things fastened together • **21 directive** instruction • **cerebral** [səˈri:brəl] **cortex** part of the brain that controls movement and the senses • **27 to penetrate** to pass through

Page 222

• **3 creaking** *Quietschen* • **4 to reveal** (here:) to open up to view • **4 chamber** [ˈtʃeɪmbər] hall • **6 cave** *Höhle* • **barrel-vaulted ceiling** with a high ceiling that is round like the inside of a barrel (*Fass*) • **8 subway** (AE) *Untergrundbahn* • **9 to abandon s.th.** (here:) to stop work on s.th. • **10 stalactite** long piece of pointed rock hanging down from the roof of a cave • **11 stalagmite** long piece of rock pointing upwards from the floor of a cave • **12 uneven** not level, some short and some long • **16 shallow** not deep (*flach*)

Page 223

• **3 to gain strength** to become stronger • **5 to keep up** to maintain the same pace as s.o. else • **10 to wrap s.th./s.o. around s.th./s.o.** to put s.th. firmly around s.th./s.o. • **purposely** with a certain purpose (*Absicht*) • **15 to brace yourself to do s.th.** to prepare yourself for s.th. unpleasant • **17 alcove** small recessed section of a room (*Nische*) • **18 to carve** to shape wood or stone by cutting away material from it • **19 pillow** *Kissen* • **to ease s.o. down upon s.th.** to gently place s.o. down on s.th. • **21 fevered** [ˈfi:vərd] **state** (fig.) state of great excitement • **26 wrapper** *Verpackung* • **27 hip** *Hüfte* • **28 panties** (AE) women's underpants

© Westermann

Page 224

• **1 to toss s.th.** to throw s.th. carelessly • **to bury** [ˈberi] to put s.th. deeply into s.th. else • **2 to crawl** *kriechen* • **4 to hiss** *zischen* • **6 to fall apart** (here:) to lose all control • **9 small of the back** lower part of the back • **11 random** with no particular order • **assemblage** collection • **to fumble with s.th.** to use s.th. awkwardly • **17 anteroom** outer room that leads to another room • **to pass out** to lose consciousness • **18 to consummate** (formal): to make a marriage or relationship complete by having sex • **21 pacemaker** electric device attached to the heart to ensure the proper beating of the heart • **22 diaper** [ˈdaɪpər] (AE) nappy (BE) • **26 classy** (here:) *großartig*

Page 225

• **3 to tighten** *enger werden* • **5 legit** (coll.) legitimate, i.e. proper employee of the Circle • **8/9 to take on an edge** (fig.) to acquire a sharp tone of voice • **12/13 to jeopardize** [ˈʤepərdaɪz] (formal) to endanger • **17 lair** [ler] (fig.) hiding place of an animal • **19 capacity** function, position • **competitor** *Konkurrent, -in* • **23 yup** (coll.) yes • **26 to concoct** to make up, to invent • **24 to sleep over** to stay overnight • **27 to hang, hung, hung up** *auflegen* • **to get hooked up for s.th.** to become connected to s.th.

Page 226

• **5/6 to nail s.o. down** (coll.) to determine the identity of s.o. • **7 superior** person of authority above you • **15 to part** to separate • **16 doorway** *Türeingang* • **20 to spin, spun, spun away** (here:) to quickly turn and leave • **22 Cultural Revolution** a reference to an attempt to reform China's society (1966 - 1967) that had disastrous results • **23 at the behest of s.o.** (formal) because of s.o.'s request • **to outfit** (here:) to prepare with the appropriate electronic equipment • **24 to assure s.o.** *jdm zusichern* • **reward** *Belohnung*

Page 227

• **1 buying habits** what and how a person buys things • **5 blandly** in a manner showing no interesting or unusual features • **6 right angle** *rechter Winkel* • **8 headset** headphones with a microphone • **to swing, swung, swung** to move with a circular movement • **bat** *Schläger* • **13 brusqueness** [ˈbrʌsknəs] quality of being abrupt and rude • **19 flattering** *schmeichelhaft* • **22 assembly** (here:) parts of s.th. that have been put together • **23 cheekbone** *Wangenbein* • **24 sweet** (coll.) wonderful • **setup** (here:) group of people, organization • **27 level** (here:) *Pegel*

Page 228

• **4 granola** cereal made of nuts and grains • **6 chirp** high, short sound as a bird makes • **tri-tone** (here:) *Dreiklang* • **13 to settle on s.th.** to decide on s.th. • **14 reverb** electronically produced echo • **17 chosen sampling** group chosen by chance • **19 to tailor s.th.** to adjust s.th. for a special purpose • **26 rec** (abbreviation) recording (*Aufnahme*) • **exquisitely** (here:) with extreme care • **attuned to s.th.** *auf etwas abgestimmt*

Page 229

• **2 to enunciate** [ɪˈnʌnsieɪt] to speak pronouncing the words clearly • **7 dressy** elegant and formal • **10 subject to s.th.** dependent on s.th. • **11 meh** (coll., AE) not impressed, not interested • **12 Here goes.** (coll.) Let's start. • **15 tiny** [ˈtaɪni] very small • **20 prompt** (here:) sign on a computer screen to show it is ready for s.th. new • **26 pace** *Tempo* • **to power through** (coll.) to continue with s.th. in a determined way • **to spread, spread, spread s.th.** (here:) to divide s.th. up and deal with it over a longer period of time

Page 230

• **2 to pick up** (fig.) to increase • 3 **online traffic court program** a traffic safety course on the internet that a driver can take instead of paying a fine for a traffic violation • **4/5 to estimate** *einschätzen* • **17 hold on a second** (coll.) Wait a moment. • **18 demo** (here:) recording of a voice or sound for later use • **21 intimate** personal • **24 flushed** red in the face • **26 voice capture** (here:) recording of a voice that can be manipulated to form other words

© Westermann

Page 231

• **10 to accompany** *begleiten* • **16 newscaster** person who reads the news on the radio or on TV • **17 inclined to s.th.** preferring s.th. • **19 white-water** having to do with a fast-moving river or stream with rapids (*Stromschnellen*) • **rafting** (sports) riding on rapidly moving water in an open, flat rubber boat • **21 faint** very soft • **25 multi-day** lasting several days

Page 232

• **3 Grand Canyon** i.e. the Colorado River that passes through the Grand Canyon in Arizona • **12 to follow up** (here:) to give additional information on a query • **20 seductive** *verführerisch* • **thrilling** exciting • **volume** [ˈvɑːljuːm] *Lautstärke*

Page 233

• **2 to spin, spun, spun s.th.** to cause s.th. to rotate rapidly • **13 to assimilate s.th.** (here:) to fully comprehend and deal with s.th. • **14 congratulatory message** statement that you congratulate s.o. for having done s.th. • **18 to appreciate** *schätzen* • **19 candor** [ˈkændər] honesty, sincerity • **aptitude** ability, skill • **20 to expand s.th. to s.o.** (here:) to pass s.th. on to s.o. • **24 jerk** sudden, sharp movement • **fluidly** quality of having a smooth movement without interruptions • **25 routine** usual task • **involving** having to do with

Page 234

• **1 visual** scene • **herd** (fig.) like a group of animals • **1/2 in unison** at the same time • **9 unavailability** the quality of not being able to be contacted • **10 novel** different from anything before • **willful** intentional • **11 adolescent** [ˌædəˈlesnt] typical of a teenager • **13 supremely** extremely • **17 lust** sexual desire • **19 locatable** [loʊˈkeɪtəbl] able to be found • **21 peer** person of the same age group or status • **22 to keep s.o. on their toes** (fig.) to make sure s.o. performs well • **25 newbies' overrun** (here:) the excessive amount of questions that cannot be handled by the newbies

Page 235

• **2 to crack** (here:) (coll.) to get below • **5 doorjamb** upright piece forming the side of a door opening • **8 crossed** placed with one arm crosswise over the other • **10 to conceive of s.th.** (formal) to think of s.th. • **eager** enthusiastic, impatient • **to wave** *zuwinken* • **22 boat-keel** (fig.) long, narrow and protruding • **23 to take s.o. in** (here:) to acknowledge s.o.'s presence • **25 profound** (here:) extreme • **27 utterly** completely

Page 236

• **1 to succumb to s.th.** to no longer be able to resist a strong desire or force • **ready presence** (here:) easy accessibility • **4 to disgust s.o.** *jdn anwidern* • **meekness** *Sanftmütigkeit* • **5 thievery** stealing • **7 to swivel** to turn on a swivel joint (*Drehgelenk*) • **10 Yemen** country on the southern end of the Arabian peninsula that has been involved in a civil war since 2011 • **14 clip** short video • **20 record** (here:) archive • **25 pout** [paʊt] *Schmollmund*

Page 237

• **1 succession** series • **4 to pacify s.o.** to calm s.o. who is upset • **7 all over** everywhere • **8 saturation** (here:) covering all areas completely • **trackable** capable of being located • **20 jumble** confusion • **22/23 to disassemble** to take apart • **24 in the works** being developed • **25 utility** [juːˈtɪləti] usefulness

Page 238

• **2 lark** (coll.) s.th. done for amusement or for an adventure • **6 ingenuity** [ˌɪndʒəˈnuːəti] inventiveness • **wherewithal** means, resources, money, skills • **8 theatricality** exaggerated publicity • **to drag out** to do s.th. longer than necessary • **10 grain** *Körnchen* • **12 beyond** other than • **acknowledgment** *Anerkennung* • **16 proliferation** sudden increase in the number of s.th./people • **17 to go clear** (here:) to join the Circle's program of transparency – the author is making an indirect reference to the expression "going clear" used by the controversial cult religion, Scientology. • **18 inexorable** [ɪnˈeksərəbl] (formal) not to be stopped • **19 clarity** (here:) being transparent in the sense of the Circle • **media coverage** reporting by the press • **23 uncensored** *unzensiert* • **25 lobbyist** person hired by a firm or interest group to try to influence political decisions • **26 to drill** (here:) to drill for oil • **tundra** [ˈtʌndrə] frozen, flat land typical

© Westermann

of artic regions • **27 candid** frank (*offen*) • **to preach** (here:) to try to convince people about s.th. in an annoying way that claims to be morally superior • **28 to pander** (here:) to express opinions that are meant to please people and are not what you really believe

Investigate the controversy surrounding oil and gas exploration in the tundra of Alaska and Canada.

Page 239

• **1 to make, made, made for s.th.** (here:) to result in s.th. • **riveting** so exciting that it holds your full attention • **inspiring** making you feel enthusiastic about s.th. • **4 mayor** *Bürgermeister, -in* • **5 Sarasota** town in New York state • **6 city council** *Gemeinderat* • **San** [sæn] **Jose** [hoʊˈzeɪ] city in California • **6/7 city manager** administrator of a city appointed by a city council • **8 commitment** *Verpflichtung* • **12 to astound** to astonish • **to flatter** *schmeicheln* • **13 to be caught flat-footed** (fig.) to find yourself in a situation for which you are completely unprepared • **16 to go into overdrive** (fig.) to suddenly and rapidly increase • **17 Guangdong province**, cf. below:

Guangdong province is the wealthiest and most industrialized province in China, on the China Sea. It is interesting to note that Apple Inc. outsources the manufacturing of their hardware to companies in China where working conditions are often substandard.

• **18 to quadruple** to increase by four times • **20 viewership** the number of viewers • **22 Lincoln** city in England • **Lahore** city in Pakistan • **25 oppressive** cruel, harsh • **pundit** person in the media who expresses authoritative opinions • **27 to object** to say you are opposed to s.th. • **on grounds of s.th**. on the basis of s.th. • **28 to assert** to state, to claim

Page 240

• **1 for the sake of s.th.** *um einer Sache willen* • **2 momentum** (fig.) driving power • **to crush** (fig.) to completely destroy • **5 to tend to happen** to happen in most cases • **6 poetic justice** *ausgleichende Gerechtigkeit* • **9 demonstrably** clearly, obviously • **10 deviant** [ˈdiːviənt] abnormal person • **of the highest order** (here:) of the worst kind • **12 footage** recorded film or video • **13 investigator** crime expert who seeks and examines the clues to be found in a criminal case • **14 to execute** to accomplish, to carry out • **reams** great amounts • **16 fringe character** unconventional person not part of normal society • **to impede** (formal) to hinder, to stop • **unimpeachable** (formal) unquestionable as to the truth • **18 officeholder** elected official • **19 pariah** [pəˈraɪə] outcast • **clear one** (here:) person who has ‘gone transparent’ • **21 electoral doom** (fig.) being voted out of office • **22 assured** certain • **election cycle** a series of elections that regularly takes place • **26 thorough** complete • **27 beyond debate** i.e. considered a fact

Page 241

• **1 back room** (fig.) room not open to the public where politicians make secret agreements • **murky** (fig.) not clearly known • **3 inevitable** unavoidable • **4 rumblings** (here:) rumors • **9 common room** lounge open to all employees • **10 to assess** *abwägen* • **10/11 to pose a problem** to create a problem • **11 intellectual property** ideas, inventions, processes, etc. that are created by the mind and protected by the copyright laws • **17 devotee** ardent follower • **to be enthralled about s.th.** to be very enthusiastic about s.th. • **18 mystique** [mɪˈstiːk] mysterious quality • **22 to lock into s.th.** to connect with s.th. • **24 jammed** (AE) overcrowded • **24 duffer** (BE) incompetent person

Page 242

• **1 middle-school** (AE) school for children aged 11-14 • **gym teacher** (abbreviation) *Turnlehrer, -in* • **2 President’s Physical Fitness Test** test that is part of a program started by the US Government in the 1950s to encourage children to become physically active • **4 to date s.o.** to regularly go out with s.o. in a romantic context • **8 calibration** (here:) thinking about what you are about to do • **13 commanding** in charge of • **21 to spearhead** (fig.) to lead an activity • **paramilitary group** military-like organization trying to overthrow a government • **Guatemala** country in Central America • **22 resurrection** revival, return • **23 to take s.o. captive** to capture s.o. • **25 concubine** [ˈkɑːŋkjubaɪn] additional woman to the wife who is kept for sex • **27 to compel** to urge or force • **atrocity** [əˈtrɑːsəti] especially brutal act

© Westermann

Page 243

• **5 smile button** (here:) button which you press to send a smile, i.e. positive reaction to online content • **7 to lend your support to s.th.** to give your support to s.th. • **9 to denounce** [dɪˈnaʊns] to strongly criticize • **10 mismatched** (here:) with clothing not fitting well together • **garb** (humorous) clothing • **12/13 to hesitate** *zögern* • **13 gravity** seriousness • **15 to make a stand** to strongly express your opposition to s.th. • **21 petition** [pəˈtɪʃn] document signed by many people in support of or against s.th. • **alert** attentive • **22 very aware of herself** (here:) knowing exactly what she was doing • **23 untold** too great to count • **25 self-awareness** *Selbsterkenntnis* • **distinct** explicit, clear • **to wield** [wi:ld] **power** to have and use power • **28 caller ID** caller identity

Page 244

• **18 open-mic** [maɪk] **folk night** an evening when anyone can go on the stage and sing folk music • **24 stall** section in a public bathroom with an enclosed toilet • **25 on many levels** in many aspects • **26 to approve of s.th.** to support s.th., to have a positive opinion about s.th. • **carnal activity** (formal) sex • **28 to reflect poorly on s.o.** to cause people to think negatively of s.o.

Page 245

• **3 to ravish s.o.** to force a woman to have sex • **4 to take s.o.** (coll.) to have sex with s.o. • **7 glittering** (here:) exciting • **9 stride** long step • **10 to give way to s.th.** to be replaced by s.th. • **strain** (here:) slow movement requiring pressure • **11 bolt** *Riegel* • **to crane** to stretch • **12 to descend** to move lower • **14 grid** *Gitter* • **to slip** *schleichen* • **15 nape** back of the neck • **17 diving** (here:) pressing into her ear • **to gasp** to take a short, deep breath • **18 leaned into him** pressed her body onto him • **19 to trace s.th.** (here:) to pass along the surface of s.th. • **20 to battle** (here:) to be conflicted • **20/21 to assert your right to do s.th.** to state firmly that it is your right to do s.th. • **23 imperative** s.th. that must be done • **27 to lick** *lecken* • **28 to ease s.th. off** (here:) to move s.th. slowly and carefully

Page 246

• **1 filling her** (fig.) fully entering her vagina • **3 crown** (here:) penis • **6 to come, came, come** (coll.) to have an orgasm • **to shudder** to shake • **8 reckless** showing a lack of care about s.th. dangerous • **10 mischief** [ˈmɪstʃɪf] (here:) thoughts about naughty actions • **16 semblance of him** (here:) any kind of picture of him • **17 to capture** (here:) to photograph • **20 to compose yourself** (here:) to adjust your clothing so you look proper again • **23 at all** in any way • **24 to precipitate** [prɪˈsɪpɪteɪt] (here:) to cause a series of events to begin • **26 to conceal** (formal) to hide

Page 247

• **2 lackey** [ˈlæki] *Speichellecker, -in* • **2 monocle** *Einglas* • **3 distraction** *Ablenkung* • **4 to tease out** (fig.) (here:) to give only some information in order to hold s.o.'s interest • **8 vigorous** full of energy • **13 tight** (coll.) close friends • **15 conversion rate** (here:) a measure of a person's influence on the sale of a product • **retail** (*Einzelhandel*) • **raw** (here:) the total sum of money made from the sale of a product without any discounts • **17 layer** (here:) computer program • **20 fragile** [ˈfrædʒl] in a weakened physical state

Page 248

• **5 commerce** trade, business • **to spur** to make s.th. happen sooner and faster • **6 gateway** entrance • **8 to overtake** (here:) to dominate • **16 to highlight s.th.** to emphasize s.th. • **17 to leverage** [ˈlevərɪdʒ] (here:) to make productive use of s.th. • **credibility** *Glaubwürdigkeit* • **8 spreadsheet** page with lines and columns as used for bookkeeping • **23/24 to make no pretense of doing s.th.** to make no effort to hide what your real intention is

Page 249

• **7 no big deal** (coll., AE) nothing special • **9 impact** effect • **11 to burst, burst, burst through** (here:) to reply immediately • **12 to hassle s.o.** (coll.) to continuously annoy s.o. • **14 to execute** to carry out • **17** white lie (fig.) small lie told to avoid inconvenience • **21 to rise and fall on s.o.** (here:) to have sex with s.o. • **22 to ascertain** [ˌæsərˈteɪn] (formal) to determine, to find out • **23 action shot** a photo of a moving subject • **23 connects** has a logical connection • **24 bitch** (vulgar) awful woman • **25 flustered** agitated and confused • **26 to glisten** (here:) to shine with sweat

© Westermann

Page 250

• **1 to glance at s.th.** to quickly look at s.th. • **to fracture** to break • **4 to swallow hard** to swallow in an attempt to overcome or control fear, nervousness or sadness • **8 to articulate s.th. with s.th. else** (here:) to try to connect one thing with s.th. else • **10/11 to forge on** (fig.) to move on slowly and steadily • **11 thrilled** extremely happy • **13 to initiate** [ɪˈnɪʃieɪt] (formal) to set in motion • **prompted** caused • **14/15 recommendation** *Empfehlung* • **CR** Conversion Rate • **17 to accumulate s.th.** [əˈkjuːmjəleɪt] to gather s.th., to get more and more of s.th. • **19 implicitly** in a manner suggested indirectly • **surety** certainty • **24 scale** series of numbers used to assess s.th. • **25 gross** [groʊs] total without any discounts (*Brutto*)

Page 251

• **1 retail price** price of s.th. sold in a store • **commerce** (here:) sales • **to stoke** (coll.) to help to sell • **4 endorsement** statement in approval of a product • **7 to invade** (here:) to disturb • **10 score** *Endergebnis* • **15 to exceed** to do better than a set goal • **21 ridiculously** absurdly • **miraculous** remarkable • **26 imminent** about to happen

Points to Ponder: What aspect of the manner in which Amazon and other commercial websites include recommendations is the author ridiculing? Can you think of other examples where recommendations on the internet are to be taken with a great deal of scepticism?

Page 252

• **4 vino** (Spanish) wine • **6 to dice s.th.** to cut s.th. into small cubes • **to bread** *panieren* • **10 copay** additional payment • **11 bright** (here:) cheerful • **14 whole swaths** [swɑːθs] (here:) large amounts • **15 middleman** intermediary agent or representative • **18/19 upon closer inspection** when looking at s.o. more closely • **20 passingly** temporarily • **21 to labor to do s.th.** to make a great effort to do s.th. • **22 genuinely** [ˈdʒenjuɪnli] honestly, truly • **26 five grand** (coll.) $ 5,000 • **26/27 boutique** [buːˈtiːk] small shop that sells expensive items

Page 253

• **3 witty** *witzig* • **4 to pass on s.th.** to intentionally not do s.th. • **6 generous** *großzügig* • **7 measurable** *messbar* • **driver** (here:) contributor • **11 shaggy** covered with long, rough hair • **16 firmly** (here:) in a definite way • **18 to down** to drink quickly • **20 half-numb** almost without feeling and unable to react

Page 254

• **12 to not be above doing s.th.** to have no misgivings or doubts about doing s.th. • **14 aloft** (fig.) into higher regions • **16 euphoric** [juːˈfɔːriə] extremely happy • **20 footing** (here:) relationship • **21 to border on** (fig.) *an etwas grenzen* • **22 compassionate** [kəmˈpæʃənət] feeling sympathy for s.o.'s suffering • **25 faith** belief, trust • **to rekindle** [ˌriːˈkɪndl] s.th. (fig.) to bring s.th. back to life, to reactivate s.th. • **26 under the pretense of s.th.** falsely claiming the intention to do s.th.

Page 255

• **2 to feature** (here:) to contain • **7 stir-fried** cooked in hot oil • **16 sourcing** (here:) supplier • **17 trusted** *vertrauensvoll* • **collaborator** [kəˈlæbəreɪtər] (here:) person who works with you on a product • **19 Fish and Game** the California Department of Fish and Wildlife: agency that protects wildlife and forests • **to curb** [kɜːrb] to limit • **21 to raise a toast** to raise your glass for a toast (*Trinkspruch*) • **22 to beep** to make a short, high sound

Page 256

• **5 to attend to s.th.** to take care of s.th. • **12 sanity** having a healthy mind • **18 ding** sound like a bell • 27 **to quote** *zitieren*

Page 257

• **3/4 Santa Fe** city in New Mexico • **12 to occur to s.o.** to come to s.o.'s mind • **14 solid** (here:) quite good • **19 sec** (abbreviation) second • **25 to scrape** to make an unpleasant sound while moving along a rough surface

© Westermann

Page 258

• **4 to absorb** to take in • **8 dull** (here:) lacking brilliance • **to put in park** (automatic transmission) to set the motor to the parking setting • **9 condescension** *herablassende Haltung* • **to muster** (here:) to find, to gather • **13 batshit crazy** (vulgar) completely crazy • **18 barbed** (fig.) extremely sarcastic • **20 snide** (coll.) hurtful • **mean** *fies* • **callous** [kæləs] (AE) unfeeling • **27 windshield** (AE) windscreen (BE)

Point to Ponder: Create a dialogue between Mercer and Mae that centres around Mercer's comment: "[…] there is some cult taking over the world." (page 259, line 28)

Page 259

• **2 to be affiliated with s.th.** to be closely connected to s.th. • **Homie™** small computer for the home – it co-ordinates the data of all computers and smart appliances in the home • **3 bar code** pattern of lines found on products for sale – the bar code can be scanned and entered into a computer • **8 to frame s.th. for s.o.** (here:) to describe s.th. favourably to s.o. • **10 to overship** to deliver too much of s.th. • **12 to push** (coll.) to aggressively try to convince people to buy s.th. • **18 scary** (coll.) frightening • **19 to presume** to assume, to suppose • **benevolence** [bəˈnevələns] being kind and well-meaning • **21 conduit** [ˈkɑːnduɪt] channel, line of communication • **22 predatory** [ˈpredətɔːri] (here:) taking advantage of people unable to fight back • **vengeful** seeking revenge (*Rache*) • **23 to challenge** *herausfordern* • **25 coincidence** two things happening by chance at the same time in an unlikely context • **26/27 to become ensnared in s.th.** (fig.) to get caught in s.th. that is difficult to escape from • **27 witchcraft** *Hexerei*

Page 260

• **3 conspiracy theory** belief that there is a plot (*Verschwörung*) behind s.th. • **7 to drop off** to deliver • **10 UPC** Universal Product Code = bar code • **13 Charmin™** brand of toilet paper • **17 oppressor** s.o. who oppresses (*unterdrücken*) • **18 to tie to a leash** (fig.) *anleinen* • **19 autistic** (here:) (fig.) unable to communicate and form relationships • **to pick up on s.th.** (here:) to react to s.th. • **20 clue** (here:) signal • **23 pure** (here:) without faults

Page 261

• **7 vibrant** [ˈvaɪbrənt] full of life and energy • **9 fucker** (vulgar) rotten person • **19 circlejerk** (vulgar) activity of a group sexually stimulating each other • **24 to send s.o. into apoplexy** [ˈæpəpleksi] (fig.) to get s.o. extremely upset • **professorial** (negative) like a professor • **smugness** *Selbstgefälligkeit* • **antiquarian** [ˌæntɪˈkweriən] out-of-date, old-fashioned • **25 bullshit** (vulgar) nonsense • **baseline** (here:) underlying • **assumption** supposition (*Annahme*)

Page 262

• **4 fuck** (here:) (vulgar) idiot • **6 demon** [ˈdiːmən] • **10 upside down** (fig.) chaotic • **14 to sever** [ˈsevər] (fig.) to cut • **15 to stage s.th.** to organize s.th. dishonest with careful planning • **break-in** *Einbruch* • **16 to exorcize s.th./s.o.** [ˈeksɔːrsaɪz] (formal) to completely get rid of s.th./s.o. • **17 ever-sweating** [ˈswetɪŋ] continuously sweating (*schwitzen*) • **moose** *Elch* • **19 voyage** long journey by sea • **21 to double back** to turn around and go back to where you were before • **27 trailer** mobile home • **after all** *immerhin*

Page 263

• **1 compound** fenced-in area of land with buildings • **3 chain-link fence** *Machendrahtzaun* • **4 shuttered** closed with shutters (*Fensterladen*) • **rental kiosk** [ˈkiːɑːsk] kiosk where s.th. can be rented • **14 dull** (here:) stupid • **attic** space or room directly below the roof • **17 enclosure** fenced-off area • **to lean against s.th.** to rest against s.th. for support • **precariously** [prɪˈkerəriəsli] in a manner that seems to be unstable, likely to fall • **19/20 free side of the fence** on the side of the fence outside the enclosure **23 rental** (here:) rented object

© Westermann

Page 264

• **1 yard** 1 yard = 0.9144 m • **2 shore** land along an ocean, sea, or lake • **4 to extend** to make longer • **10 rule-bound shrew** (*Spitzmaus*) (fig.) s.o. who always follows the rules closely • **11 liability** [ˌlaɪəˈbɪlətɪ] being legally responsible for s.th. (*Haftung*) • **16 current** *Strömung* • **17 fuller volume** (here:) deeper and larger area • **20 to heave s.th.** to throw s.th. heavy with great effort • **25 shallows** part of a body of water that is not deep • **26 Blue Island** actually Red Rock Island in San Francisco Bay • **Angel Island** island in San Francisco Bay • **27 jagged** [ˈdʒægɪd] (here:) with rough, pointed hills

Page 265

• **1 upended** (here:) totally surprised • **2 to make it out of somewhere** to bother or manage to leave somewhere • **3 to lecture s.o.** to give s.o. a serious or angry talk about a wrongdoing • **5 in the T2K** (abbreviation) in the top 2,000 • **7 blackwater** water darkened by decaying material • **10 rooted in s.th.** based on s.th. • **12 tanker** large ship that transports cargo • **shipping lane** route for ships to take • **15 reflexive** done automatically • **18 to hold, held, held steady** (here:) to remain calm • **22 on course** in the right direction

Page 266

• **6 to venture** to continue to move along although it might be dangerous • **7 exposed to s.th.** not protected against s.th. • **9 swift** fast • **11 feature** aspect • **13 reflective** reflecting light • **to cast** (here:) to cause s.th. to shine • **16 mouth** (here:) entrance to the bay • **18 shimmer** shining light that seems to move slightly • **19 outlandish** bizarre • **21 breeze** light wind • **22 to swoop down** (fig.) to fly down suddenly • **down off s.th** (here:) down and along the surface of s.th. • **25 choppy** with a lot of small waves • **26 untenable** [ʌnˈtenəbl] unacceptable

Page 267

• **1 tug** small, powerful boat that pulls ships into harbour or along a shipping lane • **3 Coast Guard** *Küstenwache* • **4 to give s.o. away** (fig.) to reveal who s.o. is • **7 log** *Baumstamm* • **ripple** small wave • **8 groan** (fig.) *Stöhnen* • **9 bright flood** spotlight • **13 to propel** to drive, to push • **14 tailwind** wind from behind • 15 **to seize s.th./s.o.** (fig.) to take hold of s.th./s.o. • **17 rising tide** *Flut* • **22 to dare** to be bold enough to do s.th. • **23 to bother to do s.th.** to take the trouble to do s.th. • **27 to dissuade s.o. from doing s.th.** to persuade s.o. not to do s.th. • **28 concern** worry

Page 268

• **3 perimeter** outside edge of an area of land • **to collar s.th.** (fig.) to form a narrow strip along s.th. • **sheer** very steep • **5 foothold** small flat surface to climb up on • **frothy** having a great number of small bubbles on the surface • **7 stripe** narrow, long piece • **8 flotsam** [ˈflɑːtsəm] parts of boats, pieces of wood, or rubbish that lands on the shore • **embedded** (here:) caught in the seaweed • **to thread** to pass through s.th. in the manner of a thread (*Faden*) • **9 phosphorescence** faint light • **10 sheen** shine • **12 to cast** (here:) to represent • **inverted** turned upside down • **palette** thin board used by an artist to mix colours • **16 shooting star** *Sternschnuppe* • **17 arc** large curve • **21 shower** (here:) shower of light • **22 to put s.th. off** to delay doing s.th. • **23 peak** *Gipfel* • **to set yourself upon s.th.** (fig.) to try to achieve s.th. • **26 tuft of grass** number of blades of grass growing together • **27 rock outcropping** rock from below the surface of the earth that sticks out above the surface

Page 269

• **2 burrow** hole or tunnel built by rabbits, foxes, etc. • **2 mole** *Maulwurf* • **4 sole** single • **5 pine** *Kiefer* • **6 rough** not smooth • **trunk** *Stamm* • **8 low-slung** not high above the water • **constellation** (here:) group • **10 to somersault** *einen Purzelbaum schlagen* • **18 faintest** slightest • **19 bony** [ˈboʊnɪ] like a bone • **21 equilibrium** balance of opposing forces • **scent** [sent] smell

Page 270

• **3 headland** narrow piece of high land that sticks out into the sea • **4 to register** (here:) to be noticeable • **ridge** narrow area of high land that forms the top of a range of mountains or hill • **5 egret** [ˈiːgrət] *Silberreihe* • **heron** *Reiher* • **to glide** to fly along without moving the wings • **6 to drift** to move along without an aim • **blank** complete absence of thoughts • **14 permutations** (plural) various ways in which a set of things can be ordered or organised • **to take comfort** *sich damit trösten* • **19 to shush** (here:) to sink quietly • **20 sore** hurting, painful • **25 amplified voice** voice made louder with an amplifier

© Westermann

Page 271

• **1/2 with venom** (fig.) with ill will, seeming to have bad intentions • **3 off-balance** not steady on your feet • **4 pose** certain position of the body • **5 to descend upon s.o.** (here:) to suddenly appear in front of s.o. • **roughly** using force and not being careful • **7 squad car** police car • **officer** police officer • **8 to weigh s.th.** (here:) to consider carefully • **11 to corroborate** to confirm • **15 vintage** classic • **19 determined** *entschlossen* • **21 cuffed** (coll.) handcuffed • **22 to sober** (here:) to no longer seem affected by alcohol • **25 to have the run of a place** (fig.) to have free access to a place

Page 272

• **3 adrenaline** [əˈdrenəlɪn] hormone that increases the pulse and heart beat in moments of stress • **to pace** to keep walking back and forth • **6 to bail s.o. out** to pay for s.o. accused of a crime to be released from jail until their court trial • **7 speeding ticket** *Strafzettel für zu schnelles Fahren* • **12 to hound s.o.** to constantly annoy s.o. until this person does what you want • **15 fitful sleep** irregular, discontinuous sleep • **17 the slate** (*Schiefertafel*) **was blank** (fig.) she would be able to start all over again because the past was forgotten • **24 to fade** (here:) to slowly disappear • **26 to cover for s.o.** to take over s.o.'s work for a short period of time

Page 273

• **10 after hours** after work or after business hours • **12 recess in her mind** (fig.) deep, hidden place in her mind • **13 web alert** notification on the internet • **14 to charge s.o. of a crime** to formally accuse s.o. of a crime • **16 charges** formal accusation by the police • **23 to spare s.o**. *jdn schonen* • **28 troubling** upsetting

Page 274

• **6 spur-of-the-moment** sudden, without planning in advance • **12 exasperated** extremely annoyed • **burst** (here:) sudden, intense rushing of air • **13 distinct sensation** definite impression • **25 wide-angle** *weitwinkel* • **logline** information about when s.th. is being filmed

Page 275

• **1 to fast-forward** to quickly wind a film to a later scene • **3 deliberation** act of thinking carefully about a decision • **8 standing** (here:) *gültig* • **9 to collude** to work together secretly to trick others • **11 felon** [ˈfelən] criminal • **12 aversion** (here:) tendency to avoid a situation • **18 termination** (formal) act of firing s.o. • **25 curtly** [kɜːrtli] abruptly

Page 276

• **6 overall** in general • **6/7 to go through the floor** (coll.) (here:) to become a business failure • **8 bluntness** being straight to the point • **selfishness** only thinking of yourself • **9 sting** (fig.) sharp pain • **13 top quartile** [ˈkwɔːrtaɪl] top quarter • **elaborately** (here:) for quite a long time • **18 to overlap** *überlappen* • **24 self-denunciation** self-criticism • **26 imbecile** [ˈɪmbəsl] idiot

Page 277

• **1 schizophrenic** suffering from a mental illness characterized by a disconnect from reality • **to overtake s.o.** (feeling) to suddenly dominate s.o. • **3 feverishly** (fig.) with great effort • **4 commitment** devotion • **6 to keep s.o. on target** to make sure that s.o. meets the goals • **8 involvement** *Mitwirkung* • **9 to pledge** to promise • **11 to entail** (formal) to involve • **12 to convert s.th.** (here:) to deal with s.th. • **15 acute** [əˈkjuːt] (here:) focused upon • **26 to swear, swore, sworn s.o. to secrecy** *jdn zur Verschwiegenheit verpflichten*

Page 278

• **1 crimson** deep, purplish red • **2 rivulet** (fig.) small stream • **armpit** *Achselhöhle* • **5 niece** [niːs] *Nichte* • **7 crude** simple, not refined, primitive • **8 to rap** to hit a hard surface several times • **9 void** (here:) the surrounding emptiness • **10/11 to acknowledge s.th.** to take notice of s.th. • **12 khakis** [ˈkɑːkiz] yellowish-brown trousers • **13 to take, took, taken in** (here:) to occupy, to fill • **19 not remotely** not in any way • **20 twitch** sudden, uncontrollable movement • **26 corkscrew** (fig.) movement in tight circles

© Westermann

Page 279

• **4 sophomore year** (AE) second year at a four-year college • **6 to round up** to make a number less exact by increasing it to the nearest whole or simple number • **16 gaze** stare • **20 tracksuit** *Trainingsanzug* • **21 Iron Man™ action figure** toy that represents the superhero Iron Man, who appears in an American comic book series • **28 on firm ground** in a secure position, safe • **obfuscation** [ˌɑːbfʌsˈkeɪʃən] (formal) the act of purposely giving unclear or confusing information

Page 280

• **3 coarseness** rough language • **4 imperceptibly** (formal) in a manner hardly noticeable • **8 empathetically** with empathy • **16 embrace** (here:) position where the palms are held together • **19 to be held accountable for s.th.** to be considered responsible for s.th. • **26 ultimate** final

Page 281

• **7 reverberations** (here:) unpleasant consequences • **9 unconscionable** [ʌnˈkɑːnʃənəbl] (formal) so bad it makes you feel ashamed • **15 to make s.th. up to s.o.** (idiom) to do s.th. for s.o. to compensate for s.th. bad you have done • **24 settled** decided • **25 rhetorical question** question asked where the answer is obvious or not expected

Page 282

• **3 to cheat on s.o.** *jdn betrügen* • **undeniable** [ˌʌndɪˈnaɪəbl] that cannot be said to be untrue • **19 various** many, diverse • **indignity** *Demütigung*

Page 283

• **10 to be entitled [ɪnˈtaɪtld] to s.th.** to have the right to do or have s.th. **18 gay** (coll.) homosexual • **21 to come out** (coll.) to reveal your sexual or gender identity if it is other than heterosexual/cisgender • **23 to attend to s.th.** to take care of s.th. • **28 tumor** [ˈtuːmər] • **to fester** (fig.) to become worse and worse

Page 284

• **7 to come out of the closet** (fig.) to reveal your sexual or gender identity if it is other than heterosexual/cisgender • **8 deviance** [ˈdiːviəns] s.th. not considered the normal behaviour • **8/9 mainstream** considered normal by the majority of people • **12 to persecute** *verfolgen* • **14 tacitly** without expressing in words • **18 untenable** unable to be defended • **21 to sip** to drink a small amount of a liquid • **24 quest** search

Page 285

• **2 Julian Assange**, cf. below:

Julian Assange (1971 –) is an Australian computer programmer and the founder of the controversial WikiLeaks that has leaked top secret documents that have proved to be an embarrassment to the US government. The question remains whether his actions have done more good or more damage.

• **6/7 breach of security** action that allows top secret or sensitive information to be made available to the public • **7 clear and present danger** concept formulated in a majority opinion by Supreme Court Justice Oliver Wendell Holmes in 1919, cf. below:

Clear and present danger has been used to determine whether there is any justification for limiting freedom of speech and freedom of the press as expressed in the First Amendment of the US Constitution. According to this doctrine, it must be decided whether the public has a right to know about a certain action or document relating to the US Government, whether the government has a legitimate right to keep certain information secret, or whether the government is just trying to keep embarrassing information from the public eye.

© Westermann

• **13 the Pentagon Papers**. Cf. below:

The Pentagon Papers was a study prepared by the Department of Defense that detailed the US Government's political and military involvement in Vietnam from 1945 to 1967. The papers were released by Daniel Ellsberg, who had worked on the study. The study was published by the *New York Times* in 1971. The publication revealed that the Johnson Administration had lied about the conduct of the Vietnam War, e.g. giving false statistics about the number of the enemy killed, engaging in secret military activities, and constantly giving the impression that war was soon to be won. President Nixon, who became president in 1969, tried to prevent further publication of the Pentagon Papers in various newspapers by going before the Supreme Court. In *New York Times Co. v. United States* (403 U.S. 713) the Supreme Court decided that the American public had the right to know about the government's scandalous deceptions and allowed further publication of the Pentagon Papers.

Points to Ponder: Does Bailey have some valid points to make when using the Pentagon Papers and WikiLeaks as the basis for his arguments? Does his argumentation become specious?

13 splinter *Holzsplitter* • **16 gossipy** (coll.) liking to talk about other people's private lives – Baily's comments here are referring primarily to WikiLeaks. • **17 takeaway** (coll.) information that can be gathered from s.th. • **18 Gadhafi** (1942 - 2011) former dictator of Libya • **19 release** *Freigabe* • **19/20 to put s.o. on better behavior** (idiom) to force s.o. to behave better • **24/25 to be at odds with s.o./s.th.** (fig.) to be in conflict with s.o./s.th.

Page 286

• **1/2 mutually assured destruction** (MAD) concept developed during the Cold War (1945 -1990) that posited that the USA and the Soviet Union would never go to war against each other because both had similar arsenals of atomic weapons that would assure mutual destruction if one attacked the other • **4/5 surreptitious** (ˌsɜːrəpˈtɪʃəs) done secretly so as not to be noticed • **6 upfront** honest, frank • **13 to covet** [ˈkʌvət] (here:) to wish to openly express • **23 distorted** (here:) not truthful, incorrect • **26 piecemeal** in pieces or fragments • **27 sliver** (fig.) small, thin piece of s.th. cut off

Page 287

• **8/9 cue** [kjuː] signal • **10 to bother** to worry, to disturb • **15 to elude** (here:) to not manage to obtain • **18 in line with s.th.** in agreement with s.th. • **23 cracked** *rissig* • **24 assessment** evaluation • **25 to utilize** (formal) to use

Page 288

• **9 to tumble out** to suddenly fall out • **to restrain** to hold back • **16 perception** (here:) impression you have of s.o. • **19 widespread** *weitverbreitet* • **20 to demystify s.th.** [ˌdiːˈmɪstɪfaɪ] to remove the mysterious aspects of s.th. • **23 to engage in s.th.** (formal) to take part in s.th.

Page 289

• **9 cancerous** (fig.) spreading and destroying like cancer • **12 to conjure s.th.** (fig.) to think s.th. up, to imagine • **14 enabler** s.o./s.th. that makes s.th. possible • **17 spouse** wife or husband • **20 way back when** (coll.) a long time ago • **21 conceptual** only as an idea • **half-kidding** (coll.) half-joking • **24 close-circuit camera** camera connected to an internal network of cameras that transmit videos to screens that can only be seen in a certain area

Page 290

• **2 trackability** ability to determine the location of s.th./s.o. • **4 log** (here:) record • **7 money transfer** *Überweisung* • **8 to blackmail** *erpressen* • **9 stick-up** (coll., AE) robbery • **10 to philander** (of a man) to have sexual relations with many different women • **20 to wrap s.th. up** (coll.) to finish s.th., to bring s.th. to an end

© Westermann

Page 291

• **8 to give s.o. credit for s.th.** *jdm für etwas Anerkennung zollen* • **17 unburdened** *unbelastet* • **18 to be subsumed by s.th.** (formal) to be taken over by s.th., to be included in s.th. • **22 to be tempted by s.th.** *durch etwas in Versuchung geraten* • **23 moral terms** expressions that have to do with morality • **23/24 Mid-western church-goer** person who is typically conservative and religious as found in America's Middle West • **27 to cure** [kjʊr] *heilen*

Page 292

• **1 to drag down** to pull down • **2 petty** unimportant • **to hoard s.th.** to secretly collect great amounts of s.th. • **5 to go onstage** to appear before an audience on a stage • **9 flow** (here:) input • **16 stage manager** person responsible for the lighting, scenery, necessary repairs etc. for stage performances • **16 spectral** ghostly • **18 brisk** energetic • **19 outlined in blue** surrounded by a blue line • **20 to blush s.th.** (here:) to give s.th. a reddish appearance • **to apply** (here:) *anbringen* • **20/21 lavalier** [ˌlævəˈlɪr] **microphone** mini microphone

Page 293

• **1 thump** sound of s.th. heavy hitting a surface • **11 with abandon** (here:) with great enthusiasm • **18/19 to shed light on s.th./s.o.** (fig.) to clarify s.th. or s.o.'s situation, to provide additional information about s.th./s.o. • **20 evolution** gradual development • **28 to orient yourself to s.th.** to be able to determine your location relative to s.th.

Page 294

• **1 leaden** [ˈledn] like lead (*Blei*) • **2 numb** [nʌm] without feeling • **8 slightest** hardly noticeable • **15 awakening** (here:) sudden realization or awareness of s.th. This term is also used to describe s.o.'s sudden emotional acceptance of Christ, cf. the Great Awakening in 18th century America • **17 to rehearse** *proben* • **20 to steal s.o.'s thunder** (fig.) *jdm die Schau stehlen* • **25 split-second** fraction of a second • 26 **to twitch** to make a sudden, uncontrollable movement

Page 295

• **1 broad outlines** general description • **2 summary** *Zusammenfassung* • **18 murmur** speaking softly in a manner difficult to understand • **19 revelation** surprising information that is suddenly made known • **20 to assimilate** (here:) *verarbeiten* • **27 the very fact** *genau diese Tatsache*

Page 296

• **6/7 unaccountable** not responsible for the consequences • **7 to facilitate** (formal) to make s.th. easier to do • **14 cloak** [kloʊk] **of invisibility** (fig.) covering that makes it possible to remain unseen • **15 to rumble** (fig.) to make long, deep sounds • **26 succinct** [səkˈsɪŋkt] expressed in few words

Page 297

• **2 memorable** worth remembering or easy to remember • **6 to inspire s.th.** (here:) to cause/give rise/lead to s.th. • **12 ungenerous** *nicht großzügig* • **26 metaphorically** *im übertragenen Sinn* • **27 to nail it** (coll., AE) (here:) to say precisely the right thing

Page 298

• **2 to recap s.th.** (abbreviation) to recapitulate s.th., to repeat s.th. • **6 dread** feeling of great fear about what might happen in the future • **8 to resolve** (here:) to draw the conclusion • **illusory** [ɪˈluːsəri] false, deceptive, unreal

Point to ponder: What is meant by "illusory shadows?" – line 10

• **20 devoted to s.th.** (here:) specializing in s.th. • **account** report, description • **21/22 under the auspices** [ˈɔːspɪsɪz] **of s.th./s.o.** with the guidance or support of s.th./s.o. • **22 CIA** (abbreviation) Central Intelligence Agency – the spying agency of the US Government • **25 account** record, documentation

© Westermann

Page 299

• **8 to dip** (here:) to go downwards or upwards in water • **12 foothills** hills at the foot of a mountain range • **23 to indulge s.o.** (here:) to show by a gesture that you agree with s.o.'s behaviour • **28 to be confined to s.th.** to be restricted to the use of s.th.

Page 300

• **6 Mount Kenya** highest mountain in Kenya, Africa • **8 America's Cup** race between two sailing yachts since 1851 • **crew** *Mannschaft* • **9 to facilitate** to help to bring about • **11 to extrapolate** [ɪkˈstræpəleɪt] (formal) to estimate • **12 disabled** handicapped • **13 homebound** unable to leave your home

Page 301

• **10 glorious** splendid, marvellous • **14 aberrant** (formal) [æˈberənt] abnormal, wrong, erroneous • **15 generosity** *Großzügigkeit* • **22 thunderous** (fig.) loud and enthusiastic • **23 to subside** (formal) to become quieter or calmer • **24 reluctant** hesitant, unwilling • **to get in s.o.'s way** (fig.) to prevent s.o. from continuing

Point to ponder: Compare "sharing is caring" (line 26) with the slogan "everyone belongs to everyone else" in **Brave New World**.

Page 302

• **2 to apply** to be relevant • **3 apropos** [ˌæprəˈpoʊ] fitting, relevant • **6 plight** difficult situation • **9/10 undeniable** [ˌʌndɪˈnaɪəbl] cannot be disputed • **12 previous** [ˈpriːviəs] appearing before • **15 to cap s.th. off** (fig.) to bring s.th. to a conclusion • **16 to enlighten** to instruct, to provide insightful information • **23 obliged** [əˈblaɪdʒd] *verpflichtet* • **28 to accumulate s.th.** to gradually collect more and more of s.th.

Page 303

• **9 theft** *Diebstahl*

Compare the slogans used here with the slogans in **Animal Farm** and **1984** by George Orwell, and **Brave New World** by Aldous Huxley.

• **14/15 to blink back tears** to quickly open and shut the eyes to prevent tears from flowing out • **19 tight** *eng* • **21 overcome** overwhelmed • **22 brilliance** exceptional talent • **22/23 consummate** [ˈkɑːnsəmət] (formal) perfect

Page 304

• **3 stampeding applause** enthusiastic applause accompanied by stamping • **4 capper** (coll.) finale, climax

Point to ponder: Consider the role that Wikipedia has had in making as much information as possible accessible to everyone.

© Westermann

Book II

Page 307

• **1 menacing** threatening • **3 slashing** (here:) long and narrow • **3 fin** *Flosse* • **blade** *Klinge* • **4 distinctive** unique • **5 malevolent** [məˈlevələnt] wishing to cause harm • **species** [ˈspiːʃiːz] *Spezies* • **omnivorous** [ɑːmˈnɪvərəs] eating both plants and animals • **8 heretofore** (formal) up until now • **9 manta ray** *Manta* • **ethereal** [iˈθɪriəl] delicate and light • **10 on display** open to view • **12 lens** (here:) small camera • **17 steady** stable, firm, not shaking • **18 raw** original, not altered, not processed

Page 308

• **1 to zoom** to focus a camera on a scene that is far away and make it larger • **to freeze** to take a still photo of a moving subject • **to enhance** (here:) to improve the quality of a photo • **to engineer** (here:) to design • **2 to make s.th. secondary** to make s.th. less important • **3 ambient** surrounding • **in essence** essentially • **4 scannable** able to be filmed or recorded • **8 feeding** (here:) presentation of all the pertinent information • **9/10 insatiable** [ɪnˈseɪʃəbl] unable to be satisfied, (here:) always wanting more food • **11 to digest** *verdauen* • **12 herring** *Hering* • **squid** *Tintenfisch* • **13 to deposit s.th.** to put s.th. down in a particular place • **14 grainy** like little pieces of sand or seed • **16 unfettered** unrestricted • **17 digestive** relating to digestion • **24 octopus** *Tintenfisch, Krake*

Page 309

• **1 consumer** *Verbraucher, -in* • **3 provided** *vorrausgesetzt* • **adequate exposure to the sun** enough of the sun shining on the solar cells • **6 to endorse s.th.** to publicly support s.th. • **to ensure** to make sure • **7 to expose s.o. to s.th.** (here:) to allow s.o. access to s.th. • **9 on a lark** (fig.) for the sake of amusement • **12 sixteen feet** 4.88 m • **13 12 feet** 3.66 m • **diameter** [daɪˈæmɪtər] *Durchmeser* • **spineless** without a spine (*Rückgrad*) • **hue** [hjuː] colour • **14 veined** [veɪnd] having veins (*Vene*) • **15 to flail** to move about wildly without control • **to fumble for s.th.** to awkwardly try to find s.th. with your hands • **16 telescope octopus** *Amphitretus pelagicus*, transparent and colourless octopus with tubular eyes • **17 bulbous** round and fat • **19 to inflate** to fill with air • **confident** *selbstsicher* • **to spin, spun, spun** to rotate rapidly • **22 to discern** [dɪˈsɜːrn] (formal) to determine, to identify • **23/24 to encompass** (formal) to include • **25 tentacle** [ˈtentəkl] *Fangarm* • **26 topography** [təˈpɑːgrəfi] physical features of an area of land

The octopus is a highly intelligent invertebrate that has developed several brains. Scientists are still acquiring knowledge about this animal through observation and experiments.

Page 310

• **1 endearing** [ɪnˈdɪrɪŋ] causing people to feel affection for you • **3 sentient** [ˈsentiənt] able to see and feel things through the senses • **5 flamboyantly** theatrically • **8 propelling itself** pushing itself • **12 to be under no illusion about s.th.** (fig.) to understand the reality of s.th. • **13 scintillating** [ˈsɪntɪleɪtɪŋ] exciting, stimulating • **14 downtime** period of inactivity • **16 sublime** grand, inspiring • **banal** [ˈbeɪnl] very ordinary, lacking originality • **19/20 casually** in a relaxed manner • **24 elemental** basic • **period** (coll.) expression meaning that that's the way it is/nothing more needs to be said • **25 to espouse** [ɪˈspaʊz] **s.th.** (formal) to advocate or support s.th. • **28 to illuminate** (here:) to explain, to clarify

Page 311

• **1 the inevitable** s.th. that cannot be avoided • **3 to hint** to indirectly suggest • **cryptic** mysterious, difficult to comprehend • **4 to pique** [piːk] to arouse, to excite • **5 to submit** to hand in • **8 ancestor** person in your family who lived before you • **12 stage** phase • **13 momentum** impetus, strength • 14 **Washington** i.e. the US government in Washington, DC • **14 to wilt** (fig.) to grow weak, to become less confident • **15 under the suspicion of s.o.** being considered not trustworthy or honest by s.o. • **18 to work out the bugs** (coll.) to find and remove the faults • **20 to eclipse s.th.** (fig.) to surpass s.th. in importance • **22 woodwind** wooden instrument played by blowing • **acoustic strum** sound of the strings of a guitar being passed over by the fingers and not electronically modified • **26 locket** small case that can be opened to hold a miniature picture and is worn around the neck with a chain or necklace • **27 breastbone** *Brustbein* • **28 Velcro™** *Klettverschluss*

© Westermann

Page 312

• **1/2 adjustment** slight correction • **2 jarring** annoying, disagreeable, irritating • **5 essential** of great importance • **7 to accommodate s.th.** (here:) to provide enough space for s.th. • **summation** *Zusammenfassung* • **8 snug** fitting comfortably • **9 brushed-metal** metal that is polished but not shiny • **finish** covering • **Wonder Woman®** superhero in American comic books • **15 current** happening at the moment • **16 to highlight s.th.** to mark s.th. for emphasis • **21 unique** individual • **24 stratospheric** (fig.) very high • **27 frond** long leaf

Page 313

• **2 nook** quiet place, corner, niche • **to cling, clung, clung to s.th**. to hold tightly to s.th. • **2/3 foliage** [ˈfoʊliɪdʒ] leaves of plants • **5 Actinopterygii** the largest class of fish • **cod** *Kabeljau* • **7 Greensboro** city in North Carolina • **10 offspring** an animal's young • **18 curled** bent in a curve • **21 unlikely** (here:) seemingly improbable • **freckles** *Sommersprossen* • **snout** [snaʊt] an animal's projecting nose and mouth? • **22 Chinese lantern** lamp in a paper or translucent case that can be folded together • **25 fragility** quality of being delicate, easily broken • **27 to trace the contours** (here:) to move along the inside of the glass walls of the tank

Page 314

• **1 apart** separate • **progeny** [ˈprɑːdʒəni] (formal) offspring • **12 curly** *lockig* • **cuffed** *mit Aufschlag* • **16 to adopt** (here:) to take up, to use • **studied** (here:) carefully prepared • **performative** as if performing on the stage • **20 feast** *Festessen* • **at hand** soon to begin • **24 passingly** superficially • **25 vicious** [ˈvɪʃəs] cruel, brutal • **wholly** [ˈhoʊlli] completely • **sentient** [ˈsenʃnt] aware of the surroundings through the senses • **embodiment** (formal) typical example, representation • **26 predatory** [ˈpredətɔːri] hunting down animals to kill and eat them • **27 trepidation** [ˌtrepɪˈdeɪʃn] (formal) fear about s.th. that is going to happen

Page 315

• **5 salmon** [ˈsæmən] *Lachs* • **6 to devour** [dɪˈvaʊər] to eat s.th. eagerly • **8 with gusto** [ˈgʌstoʊ] enthusiastically • **12 lobster** *Hummel* • **14 Maine lobster** *Homarus americanus*, species of lobster found on the Atlantic coast of North America • **15 equipped** (here:) having the capacity • **19 presumably** *vermutlich* • **19/20 for the benefit of s.o.** for the sake of s.o. • **21 to map** (here:) to determine the shape and size of s.th. • **sensor** sense organ • **22 obedient** [əˈbiːdiənt] *gehorsam* • **23 patience** *Geduld* • **24 to process** (here:) *verdauen* • **crustacean** [krʌˈsteɪʃn] *Krustentier* • **25 to dangle s.th.** to hang s.th. loosely • **claw** *Schere*

Page 316

• **3 to snatch** to grab • **4 squeal** [skwiːl] long, high sound • **5 to engulf** to cover completely • **11 to consume** (formal) to eat • **11/12 gruesome** [ˈgruːsəm] horrible to look at • **16 gullet** *Speiseröhre* • **intestines** [ɪnˈtestɪnz] *Eingeweide* • **17 particulate** in the form of particles • **21 digestion** *Verdauung* • **24 Pacific sea turtle** large turtle found in the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans • **25 torso** [ˈtɔːrsoʊ] *Rumpf* • **26 patchwork** with a pattern of small squares of various colours • **27 tight** (here:) small

Page 317

• **4 habitat** place where an animal lives • **5 to dwell** (literary) to live • **6 light-dappled** with spots of light • **8 to behold, beheld, beheld s.th./s.o.** (literary) to observe or look at s.th./s.o. • **predator** [ˈpredətər] animal that hunts and kills animals for food • **9 to harness** (fig.) to try to obtain • **15/16 impenetrable** cannot be passed through • **17 hold tight** Get ready! • **19 lean** *schlank* • **20 ravenous** extremely hungry • **21 main course** *Hauptgang* • **23 to tilt s.th.** to move s.th. down to one side • **25 vortex** mass of water spinning around very fast • **26 to clear** (here:) to pass • **27 threshold** (here:) opening

Page 318

• **2 shape-shifting** change in shape • **3 to unhook** to remove from a hook (*Haken*) • **4 to subsume** (here:) to consume • **5 to narrate** *erzählen* • **7 to vomit s.th.** (here:) *etwas ausspucken* • **9 to dissolve** *sich auflösen* • **10 cracker** *Keks* • **saliva** *Speichel* • **11 to exit** to leave • **flake** *Flocke* • **12 ponderously** (fig.) very slowly and carefully • **12/13 indistinguishable** not able to be identified as s.th. different from other things • **23 to trade** to exchange

© Westermann

Page 319

• **2 dull-eyed** with eyes that are not bright • **wrath** [ræθ] great anger • **5/6 clarity** (here:) more exact information • **7 obscured** covered to prevent you from seeing s.th. clearly • **10 to natter about s.th.** (coll., BE) to chat about s.th. • **11 to witness** to see s.th. happen in-person • **16 briskly** quickly and energetically • **26 after the fact** (here:) after having occurred

Page 320

• **2 rumble** long, deep sound • **6 cubicle** [ˈkjuːbɪkl sectioned off space in an office surrounded by walls where an employee can work at a desk • **7 news ticker** machine that prints the news on a moving strip of paper • **7/8 retro analog telephone** telephone with a disk to dial with and not connected to a digital system • **9 arrhythmically** with an irregular rhythm • **9/10 telex device** machine that types out the latest news from sources from far away • **10 letterpress** (printing) section of raised letters that is covered with ink and pressed on a sheet of paper • **decor** [deɪˈkɔːr] interior design • **16 carbon expenditures** costs involving the use of fossil fuels • **19 distracted** *abgelenkt* • **22 to flinch** to suddenly move your body or face because of pain • **23/24 Chinese dissident** i.e., Ai Weiwei (1957 -) • **24 to highlight s.th.** (here:) to focus on s.th. that should be made known to the public

Page 321

• **3/4 meanderings** (here:) walking around without any particular aim • **14 tense** very nervous and worried • **shaky** not steady • **20 AG** (abbreviation) Addition Guidance • **24 to babble** to talk quickly and continuously in a silly manner

Page 322

• **4 shaken** upset • **8 perplexed** confused and anxious • **9 croquet** [kroʊˈkeɪ] game played on a lawn with large wooden hammers and wooden balls • **to alight on an idea** (fig.) to suddenly think of s.th. • **15 to assure s.o.** to tell s.o. that s.th. is definitely true • **16 to involve s.th.** to have to do with s.th. • **18 to soak s.th. in** (coll.) to think about s.th. new and try to understand it • **26 to take a breath** (fig.) to slow down and relax • **27 skill** *Fertigkeit* • **28 serene** [səˈriːn] calm and peaceful • **skull** *Schädel*

Page 323

• **5 doomsayer** person who predicts s.th. horrible will happen • **8 tile** (here:) small square picture on a screen • **10 to stir up** (fig.) to cause, to provoke • **11 intrigue** [ɪnˈtriːg] (here:) curiosity • **14 to hold, held, held a pose** (here:) to keep to a certain form of disingenuous behaviour • **17 rogue [roʊg] call** uninvited telephone call from a potentially dishonest or criminal stranger • **19 to thwart s.o.** to prevent s.o. from doing s.th. • **to impede s.th.** to hinder s.th. • **21 counsel** advice • **26 to be in touch with s.o.** (fig.) to communicate with s.o.

Page 324

• **1 to make a mental note of s.th.** (fig.) to make a point of remembering s.th. • **3 unsettling** unnerving, disturbing • **6 to relish s.th.** to get great pleasure from s.th. • **7 conduit** [ˈkɑːndɪt] (formal) person who passes on information to other people • **8 intrigue** (here:) excessive excitement that surrounds s.th. secret • **to cripple s.o.** to disable s.o. • **9 paralysis** [pəˈræləsɪs] *Lähmung* • **12 Calder** sculpture or mobile by the American sculptor, Alexander Calder (1898 - 1976) • **20 ground-level** (here:) basic • **23 moving** *bewegend*

Page 325

• **1 to wear s.th. lightly** (fig.) to not be overwhelmed by s.th. • **2 vacant** unoccupied • **4 to delve** (fig.) to inquire more deeply for information • **to reciprocate** [rɪˈsɪprəkeɪt] to respond to an action with a similar one • **5 far-reaching** having widespread effects • **6 meditative** thoughtful • **8 to be drawn to s.th.** (fig.) to be attracted to • **calamity** disaster • **11 to overtake, overtook, overtaken s.o.** *(here:) jdn beanspruchen* • **12 elimination** the act of getting rid of s.th. • **16/17 to count on s.th.** *mit etwas rechnen* • **21 with fanfare** (here:) (fig.) with a lot of showy publicity • **22 clarification** making s.th. clearer • **24 novelty** s.th. new • **24/25 inevitability** s.th. certain to happen • 25 **to predict** *voraussagen*

© Westermann

Page 326

• **1 fundraiser** event to raise money for a good cause • **3 Peruvian** adjective of Peru • **trance** (here:) electronic music that began in the late 1980s • **choir** [ˈkwaɪər] *Chor* • **6 to cast** to pour liquid metal into a special container and let it harden • **6/7 bursting** (fig.) completely filled • **9 faux** [foʊ] **-curtsey** [ˈkɜːrtsi] not a real curtsey (*Hofknicks*) • **10 fanfare** (here:) (fig.) theatrical behaviour • **15 media buyer** person who buys TVs, radios, newspapers, etc. for a firm • **19 Hall of Mirrors** (fig.) building in an amusement park with large concave and convex mirrors on all the walls inside • **22 distributor** *Großhändler* • **Orlando** city in Florida • **24 reciprocation** [rɪˌsɪprəˈkeɪʃn] (here:) working together and sharing information • **28 casual apparel** clothing for everyday use and when not working

Page 327

• **1 to link** *verbinden* • **2 to encompass** to include • **4 reciprocation** [rɪˌsɪprəˈkeɪʃn] (here:) act of returning a favour • **to engender** (formal) to produce • **6 profuse** [prəˈfjuːs] (here:) long and detailed • **to surpass** (formal) to be better than s.th. else • **15 to feature** to have as the main characteristic • **17 boilerplate conversion** changing standard expressions and words for a specific occasion • **20 devalued** lowered in importance • **22 spaced on** (here:) tried to save time with • **23 to remedy** [ˈremədi] to correct

Page 328

• **6 to offend** *beleidigen* • **7 peeved** (coll.) annoyed • **XO** symbol for "hugs and kisses" • **8 subsequent** coming after s.th. else • **11 to provoke** to bring about • **flurry** (here:) sudden occurrence of many events • **12 commitment** dedication (*Engagement*) • **19 apprise s.o. of s.th.** [əˈpraɪz] (formal) to inform s.o. of s.th. • **21 inquisitive** curious • **22 alteration** change • **26 chilled** very cold • **brownie** small, flat cake made with chocolate that is cut into squares • 28 **to pull back** (here:) to quickly move back

Page 329

• **1 almond** *Mandel* • **4 single-serving** to be used only once • **6 to claw** (here:) to grab, to seize • **desperate** *verzweifelt* • **7 pill-popping addict** s.o. who constantly has the urge to take pills • **10 processed food** preserved food, frozen or canned food • **to nurse** (here:) to drink slowly • **11/12 immoderate** *maßlos* • **12/13 within the bounds** within the limits • **13 moderation** quality of not being excessive • **13/14 to liberate** *befreien* • **16 noble** (here:) having high moral standards • **20 to keep s.o. grounded** (fig.) to keep s.o. sensible • **to fuel s.th.** (here:) to give s.th. a purpose

Page 330

• **2/3 procedure** method of doing s.th. • **11 to lapse** to slow down from the usual pace • **22 lest** (literary) in case • **28 to deviate from s.th**. to differ from s.th. • **buoyancy** [ˈbɔɪənsi] (fig.) cheerful feeling

Page 331

• **fierce** [fɪrs] (here:) ready for aggressive action • **7 indomitable** [ɪnˈdɑːmɪtəbl] brave and determined • **12 acolyte** [ˈækəlaɪt] (formal) follower • **15 to institute** (formal) to introduce a new system or policy • **17 notable** famous • **18 exposure** (here:) publicity • **20 presumably** seemingly • **21 bustle** [ˈbʌsl] busy activity • **unsteady** (here:) insecure, anxious

Page 332

• **1 to rattle** (fig.) to rapidly shake about • **3 appropriately** *entsprechend* • **wall-to-wall** (fig.) complete • **4 thoroughly** *vollkommen* • **5 to amass s.th.** to collect a huge amount of s.th. • **7 to settle into s.th.** to get used to or make yourself comfortable with sth. • **16 to upgrade** (here:) to renovate • **16/17 smart appliance** electronic household device operated with a built-in computer • **17 shade** *Rouleau* • **to monitor** (here:) to control and watch over with a computer • **19 to track** (here:) to closely follow and register • **20 feedback** (here:) opinion of the product purchased • **25 to promote** *fördern* • **27 to reciprocate** to return

© Westermann

Page 333

• **3 to gather** to collect • **6 to crack** to hit s.th. so as to cause a crack (*Riss*) • **8 rigid** stiff • **14 to page through** to search through websites • **18 tear** [ter] hole made by tearing (*zereißen*) • **19 down** not in operation • **20 whereabouts** location • **22 fathomless** bottomless • **27 spread themselves** (here:) travelled in many different directions • **28 remote** far away from civilization

Page 334

• **1 Namibian** adjective of Namibia, a country in south-western Africa • **4 unbearable** *unerträglich* • **5 hiss** *Zischen* • 6 **directory** *Verzeichnis* • **10 nipple** *Brustwarze* • **12 to drain** (fig.) to cause to slowly disappear • **16 chipper** (coll.) cheerful • **16/17 to catch on** to become popular • **19 to strike, struck, struck a nerve** (fig.) to provoke an angry or upset reaction • **20 deflated** (fig.) disappointed, feeling less confident • **to buoy s.o.** [bɔɪ] (fig.) to make s.o. feel more confident • **22 abuzz** filled with talk and excitement • **26 Centers for Disease Control** (and Prevention) federal government agency that deals with epidemics

Page 335

• **3 adversarial** [ˌædvərˈseriəl] (formal) opposing • **entity** (here:) organization, firm • **7 to track to s.th.** *auf etwas zurückführen* • **root** (fig.) origin • **8 executive** head of a company • **9 hippocampus** (medicine) part of the brain that stores memory • **16/17 to iron out** (fig.) to get rid of a problem • **17 wrinkle** [ˈrɪŋkl] (fig.) minor problem • **18 judging from** if you consider • **19/20 conclusion** end • **22 ascension** (formal, ironic) act of moving up – "Ascension" also has the religious meaning of "*Christi Himmelfahrt*". • **23 consequence** (here:) importance • **25 madcap** *verrückt, wild* • **26 in sync** (abbreviation) in synchronization, (here:) in the same time zone • **27 profound** (here:) significant

Page 336

• **3 to no avail** *vergeblich* • **4 Protagorean** having to do with the ancient Greek philosopher, Protagoras, who is quoted as saying: "Man is the measure of all things." • **5 unbreachable** not able to be broken through • **8 namesake** person or thing that has the same name as s.th./s.o. else • **15 loopy** (coll.) crazy • **goofy** (coll.) silly • **16 temporarily** for a short time • **derailed** (fig.) unsettled, unsure of yourself • **ad-lib** (here:) short, unprepared humorous comment • **18 angular** i.e. the haircut has sharp corners • **21 to take pains to do s.th.** (fig.) to make a great deal of effort to do s.th. • **23 to encase** to cover completely • **to undulate** [ˈʌndʒəleɪt] (formal) to move along in waves • **24 corrugated** *gewellt*

Page 337

• **4 lair** (fig.) hiding place • **5 mundane** ordinary • **8 boiler-room** (fig.) room or office where decisions are made • **penthouse** luxurious apartment at the top of a tall building • **calibration** (here:) adjustment • **11 developer** person planning new buildings on pieces of property • **21 midcentury** (here:) in/from the middle of the 20th century • **stock market** *Börse* • **22/23 Department of Education** US government agency • **23 grant** donation of money • **25 abundantly** extremely • **27 achievement** *Leistung*

Page 338

• **2 to implement** (formal) to carry out • **9 slightest** barely noticeable • **17 displayed** shown on a screen • **20 to categorize** to classify • **25 to reboot** (here:) to redesign • **ergonomic** especially designed to make people more comfortable when working • **25/26 collaborative workspace** area where people can easily work together • **28 sleek** elegant and stylish

Page 339

• **2 mannequin** [ˈmænɪkɪn] (here:) model • **cast** *Gipsverband* • **4/5 polished** (fig.) elegant and confident • **13 private equity** (here:) investment banking • **15 to prompt** (here:) to mention as a stimulus for more conversation • **20 shyness** *Schüchternheit* • **21 accumulation** (here:) every increasing amount • **22 internally** (here:) within the firm • **23 to inform s.th.** to be an important influence on s.th.

© Westermann

Page 340

• **1 twenty feet square** 1.86 m^2 • **12 Achievement Academy** exists in real life; it provides out-of-school assistance to students who need to improve their academic standards. The Indian-American girl in the novel wears a uniform, so perhaps she is attending a private high school. • **Cedar Rapids** second largest city in Iowa • **17 braces** *Zahnspanne* • **tan** yellowish brown • **22 achiever** (here:) excellent student

Page 341

• **1 class rank** the position of s.o. with regard to marks relative to others in the class • **academic strength** quality of achievement in the main subjects such as Maths, English, and Science • **17 college admission** being accepted as a student at a college • **18 spot** (here:) *Studienplatz* • **Ivy League** group of the most prestigious colleges and universities in north-eastern America: Harvard, Yale, Princeton, Columbia, Cornell, Brown, Dartmouth, Pennsylvania • **freshman** student in the first year of college or university • **23 district** *Bezirk* • **24 pop quiz** (AE) unannounced short test • **to incorporate** to include • **26 to merge** to combine • **to weigh s.th.** (here:) to determine the importance of s.th. in relation to other things

Page 342

• **1 to ding** to make a ringing sound • **to intersect** (here:) to connect • **5 nausea** [ˈnɔːziə] *Übelkeit* • **9 to stride, strode, stridden** to walk with long steps • **10 distress** strong feeling of worry, sadness • **13 coyly** [kɔɪli] in a manner pretending to be shy and innocent • **14 to pool** (fig.) to form a large amount of a liquid – in this case sweat • **16 slight** slim • **21 gong** round piece of metal that is hit with a stick to make a loud, ringing sound • **24 conflicted** (AE) confused because of opposing feelings • **26 seamless** *nahtlos* • **grid** *Gitternetz*

Page 343

• **2 abduction** *Entführung* • **3 to rectify s.th.** (formal) to correct or deal with a problem • **6 soaked in s.th.** (fig.) completely filled with s.th. • **lust** sexual desire • **13 attendance** *Anwesenheit* • **equation** *Gleichung* • **19 guesswork** determining s.th. without adequate information • **24 to rehearse** to prepare ahead of time • **blazingly** (coll.) amazingly

Page 344

• **1 no-brainer** (coll.) s.th. that requires absolutely no thought • **9 modesty** *Bescheidenheit* • **16/17 dare I say** . . . I think I am right to say . . . • **19 to stall** *zaudern*

Page 345

• **2 muscle tone** strength and firmness of the muscles • **3 pronounced** (here:) serious • **premature** [ˌpriːməˈtʃʊr] too soon • **ejaculation** *Samenerguss* • **6 demented** (here:) crazy • **10 renowned** well-known • **13/14 persecution** *Verfolgung* • **14 restriction** rule or law that limits s.th. • **17 omission** s.th. neglected or left undone • **22 scale** size • **23 to dwarf s.th./s.o.** to make s.th./s.o. seem very small compared to s.th./s.o. else • **25 fourteen feet** 4.27 m • **27 conceptual** abstract • **representational** depicting s.th. in the real world

Page 346

• 1 **rectangle** *Viereck* • **3 piece** (here:) sculpture • **5 anomalous** [əˈnɑːmələs] **to s.th.** (formal) abnormal, unexpected • **6 sardonic** [sɑːrˈdɑːnɪk] mocking • **rising** (here:) becoming increasingly economically and militarily strong • **attendant** (formal) accompanying • **8 to hit** (here:) to affect emotionally • **core** *Kern* • **9 to weep** *weinen* • **10 to pose** to sit or stand for a photo • **12 to elevate** to raise • **22 adept at s.th.** well-trained at s.th., good at doing s.th. • **23 to commission s.th.** *etwas in Auftrag geben* • **24 to have a hand in s.th.** to be partially responsible for an action • **pun** *Wortspiel* • **25 execution** act of carrying s.th. out • **dearly** very much

Page 347

• **6 soulful** expressing deep feelings • **8 to transcend** to go beyond a limit • **12 build** shape and size of the body • **quad** (abbreviation) quadrangle: open, rectangular or square area surrounded by buildings – often to be found in colleges and schools • **13 to warm up** (here:) *in Schwung kommen*

© Westermann

Page 348

• **4 stairway** set of stairs • **10 embrace** *Umarmung* • **12 to swoop towards s.th.** to suddenly rush down towards s.th. • **13 subsumed the lens** (here:) completely filled the lens with an image • **17 world-strider** (fig.) person travelling around the world quickly • **colossus** person of immense size • **21/22 grimace** [ˈgrɪməs] facial expression that shows pain or dislike • **22 to conjure** (here:) to manage to make s.th. happen with great effort • **25 Geneva** large city in western Switzerland • **26 to wilt** (here:) to weaken

Page 349

• **3 Von Trapps** a reference to the Trapp Family singers, cf. below:

> The father of the family, Captain von Trapp, being an anti-Nazi, left Austria after the *Anschluss* in 1938, settled first in Italy, then England, and finally in the USA. The family became famous for their singing. A musical about the family was performed on the stage in 1959, *The Sound of Music*, and later made into a film in 1965. The family was never in Switzerland and Annie certainly never saw them in Geneva. In the film and stage production, however, they escape through Switzerland.

• **4 drapes** long, thick, curtains – Annie is continuing with her joke. Presumably, the von Trapps, who she could not have ever seen in Geneva, were so poor that they had to make their clothing out of drapes. • **10 faux-visit** visit that never existed – here the author is making sure the reader understands Annie's joke • **10 to come, came, come over s.o.** to suddenly or unexpectedly begin to affect s.o. • **11 to settle into s.th.** (here:) to realize s.th. • **11/12 stuck on camera** being filmed with no chance of leaving • **12 to assume a mantle** (fig.) to take the role • **spokesperson** *Sprecher, -in* • **15 hurdle** challenge to be dealt with • **25 to map** (here:) to document • **26 newsreel** short film of current events • **28 herculean** (fig.) requiring a lot of determination and effort • **critical mass** (fig.) *kritische Masse*

Page 350

• **1 advance** (here:) example of technical progress • **4 to gain** to acquire • **5/6 1912 World's Fair** There was a fair in London in 1912 known as the Latin-British Exhibition. • **8 genealogical** [ˌdʒiːniəˈlɑːdʒɪkl] having to do with the study of family history • **10 lineage** [ˈlɪniɪdʒ] ancestry • **15 to stab** (fig.) to strike s.th. with a sharp instrument • **21 circa** (Latin) around • **22 to triangulate s.th.** (here:) to find s.th. with various sources of information • **23 cross-referencing** seeking information by comparing various sources of information • **25 to flash** to cause s.th. to suddenly shine brightly • **27 guinea** [ˈgɪni] **pig** (fig.) *Versuchskaninchen*

Page 351

• **6 on schedule** as planned • **12 strained** tense • **14 semiperformative** almost like performing on the stage • **17 drawn** *abgespannt* • **18 bags** (here:) dark circles from being exhausted • **20 to dig, dug, dug** (here:) to press deeply

Page 352

• **1 to train** to direct the camera to a certain subject • **3 to spare s.o./s.th.** *jdm /etwas ersparen* • **9 pedicure treatment** care and treatment of the feet and toenails • **13 killing it** (coll.) doing s.th. very well • **15 psyched** [saɪkt] (coll., AE) extremely excited • **19 to creep, crept, crept into s.th.** (fig.) to slowly develop into s.th. • **20 envy** *Neid* • **string** (here:) number • **22 self-aggrandizing** trying to make yourself seem more important • **25 to put s.o. on the spot** (fig.) to force s.o. to do s.th. at that moment, causing embarrassment or unease • **28 wiped out** (coll.) exhausted

Page 353

• **5 off-schedule** (here:) the body hasn't got used to the new time zone • **jet-lagged** tired from have flown through several time zones • **10 to get caught up** to take care of business left undone because of other affairs • **13/14 putting a lot on you** putting you under great pressure • **15 chill** coolness • **to sweep, swept, swept through s.th.** (fig.) to rush through s.th. • **20 confidence** *Vertrauen* • **25 to crash** to completely rest and do nothing

© Westermann

Page 354

• **10 petty** (here:) concerned with unimportant matters in a selfish and mean way • **15 ignominious** [ˌɪgnəˈmɪniəs] (formal) humiliating • **plebeian** [pləˈbiːən] having to do with people from the lower classes • **16 spokeswoman** female spokesperson • **shill** (coll.) dishonest salesperson • **18 mudpack** *Fangopackung* • **puffiness** swelling • **19 itch** *Juckreiz* • **21 24 rude** *unhöflich*

Page 355

• **9 to process** (here:) *sich überlegen* • **13 to flush** *hinunterspülen* • **22 constipated** unable to have a bowel movement (*verstopft*) • **24 entitlement** having the right to a privilege or benefit

Page 356

• **5 in retrospect** *rückblickend* • **6 extravagant** (here:) very large • **curves** (here:) breasts • **7 sultry** [ˈsʌltri] (here:) sexy • **harmonica** *Mundharmonika* • **8 straight** (coll.) heterosexual • **9 lewd** [luːd] obscene • **11 genteel** [dʒenˈtiːl] polite • **demonstrative** (here:) clearly showing intent • **brand** (here:) type, kind • **14 to put on a show of s.th.** (fig.) to behave in a certain way only to make a desired impression • **16 ample** large in size • **18 vitals** essential organs of the body, e.g. lungs, heart, liver, etc. • **22 provocative** (here:) erotic • **23 data points** (here:) data information

Page 357

• **1 to tout** [taʊt] **s.th.** to promote s.th., to encourage the use of s.th. • **2 to feed into a program** (here:) to add data to a program • **10 boon** (here:) example of s.th. very useful • 13 **germ** microorganism that causes disease • **14 set** (coll.) in great shape • **15 to get off your soapbox** (fig.) to stop your speech-making • **20 DNA marker** (here:) part of the DNA that indicates the possibility of a future disease • **21 nitrate** chemical used as a fertilizer or as a preservative in processed meat • **21 propensity** (formal) (here:) likelihood • **24/25 gastrointestinal** (medical) having to do with the stomach and small and large intestines • **27/28 to tip s.o. towards s.th.** to move s.o. in the direction of s.th. • **28 mutation** [mjuːˈteɪʃn] (here:) unhealthy change

Page 358

• **6 to avert** to prevent • **8 to skip s.th.** (here:) to stop talking about s.th. • **10 in moderation** within reasonable limits • **11 to convey** [kənˈveɪ] **s.th. to s.o.** to communicate s.th. to s.o. • **20 grid of sixteen images** (here:) sixteen images above and below each other on the screen • **21 blank (here:) with no picture** • **25 tech** (abbreviation) the technology department • **27 fabric** cloth

Page 359

• **3 to spike** (AE) to rise suddenly • **4 to flush** to become red in the face because of embarrassment • **16/17 to bend the rules** (fig.) to do s.th. that is not strictly according to the rules • **17 aid** [eɪd] assistance • **20 dash** (coll.) dashboard: *Armaturenbrett* • **to insert s.th. into s.th.** to put s.th. into s.th. else • **mount** *Halterung* • **21 debutante** [ˈdebjutɑːnt] (here:) young, snobbish, upper-class, wealthy woman • **24 abundantly** (here:) very • **26 operational** operating, functioning

Page 360

• **1 monumental** (here:) enormous • **premium** [ˈpriːmiəm] with the best terms • **2 to abuse s.th.** to improperly use s.th. • **2/3 entitled** (here:) privileged by wealth and ancestry • **4 family line** lineage • **Mayflower** English ship that transported, among others, English Puritans from Plymouth, England to the New World in 1620, cf. below:

These English Puritans were later known as the Pilgrims. Some of the Pilgrims came from wealthy und influential families that owned large farms. It was finally decided that a colony would be established in present-day Plymouth, Massachusetts.
The Mayflower remains an icon in the consciousness of Americans as a symbol of the desire to start a new life, lead the religious life they wanted, and escape persecution. The equally iconic Mayflower Compact, written on board the Mayflower, represents the ideal of a democracy: political leaders are accountable to the people and not vice versa.

© Westermann

The Mayflower Society, founded in 1897, has documented Americans who are descended from one or more of the 102 passengers who arrived on the Mayflower in 1620. The organization has been criticized for trying to establish a kind of American aristocracy that looks down on later immigrants to the USA.
To this day there is a kind of traditional aristocracy in Boston, Massachusetts, known as the Boston Brahmin, many of whom can trace their origins to the first settlers in Plymouth. The Cabots, the Lodges, Lowells, and Saltonstalls are examples of such families. It is, however, an aristocracy that is noted for its public service and philanthropy.
In this context, comment on Mae's experience with Annie's family.

• **7 bloodline** family line, ancestry • **10 Thanksgiving** public holiday in the USA on the fourth Thursday in November that is a reminder of the first successful harvest of the Pilgrims in Massachusetts in 1621. Like Christmas, it is an important family holiday. • **13 appropriately** fittingly • **self-effacing** showing modesty**,** not bragging • **19 to owe** [oʊ] **money** to have to pay back money that has been borrowed • **20 to proceed with s.th.** to continue with s.th. already started • **21 insistence** *Beharren* • **22 portfolio** [pɔːrtˈfoʊlioʊ] flat, leather case • **22/22 genealogy** family tree • **23 grave** very serious-looking • **24 sideburns** *Koteletten* • **rough-hewn** with timber that has a rough surface • **26 unassuming** modest • **27 extended family** aunts, uncles, nieces, nephews, grandchildren, grandparents etc.

Page 361

• **1 wiry** *drahtig* • **2 features** nose, eyes, mouth • **3 divorced** *geschieden* • **3/4 beneath s.o.'s station** lower than s.o.'s own social standing • **4 pretend** *vorgetäuscht* • **haughtiness** [ˈhɔːtinəs] arrogance • **7 roommates** people sharing the same room in a dormitory • **11 Central Valley** a region in California • **12 Fresno** city in Central Valley • **14 raw** [rɔː] (here:) causing pain • **17 tonic** mineral water with quinine • **20 Exeter**, cf. below:

Phillips Exeter Academy in New Hampshire is an independent boarding and day school for grades 9 to 12. Since 1970 it has been co-educational. Founded in 1781, it has become one of most prestigious independent schools in America. One third of its graduates go on to study at an Ivy League College.

• **20 quota spot** Many colleges and universities in America reserve spots for underprivileged, minority, and foreign students. • **22 revelatory** revealing, making you aware of what you did not know before • **23 to burnish s.th.** (fig.) to see s.th. in an even more positive light

Page 362

•**2 with ease** without any difficulty • **2/3 to take a toll on s.o**. (fig.) to have a negative effect on s.o. • **3 awkwardly** *ungeschickt* • **6/7 regimen** [ˈredʒɪmən] (medical) program of food and exercise • 14 **osteoporosis** [ˌɑːstioʊpəˈroʊsɪs] (medical) weakening of the bone structure because of a loss of calcium • **15 Bell's palsy** (medical) paralysis of one side of the face • **Crohn's disease** (medical) recurring inflammation and thickening of various parts of the intestines • **17 to embolden** to make s.o. feel more confident • **18 outpouring** (here:) the many messages • **20 to address an issue** (fig.) to deal with a problem • **22 to reach out** (here:) to express admiration and support • **25 to chop** to cut into pieces with a sharp knife • **27 affectionate** loving

Page 363

• **1 to indicate** to show • **6 ingredients** [ɪnˈgriːdiənts] *Zutaten* • **10 to keep s.th. light** (here:) to prevent s.th. from becoming too serious •**14 pivotal** critical, of great importance • **24 corollary to vaccines** i.e., the same logical argument as used for vaccines (*Impfstoff*) • **25 heartily** (here:) fully

Page 364

• **6 stiffly** *steif* • **11 to join in** to make an additional comment to what s.o. has said • **12 to make a dent in s.th.** (fig.) to make a small amount of progress on s.th. • **15 to go on record** (fig.) to officially make s.th. known • **16 tardiness** (formal) lateness, delay • **18 to poke at s.th.** to push your finger or s.th. into s.th. • **19/20 outpouring** strong and sudden expression of strong feelings • **22 jeez** (coll., AE) milder form of Jesus • **25 to reverse yourself** to change your opinion to the opposite of what you said before

© Westermann

Page 365

• **2 to squeeze** to press together • **3 vibes** (coll.) feelings, emotions • **6/7 temper** (here:) anger • **14 up yours** vulgar exclamation expressing strong dislike towards s.o. • **16 turnaround** (fig.) reaction, response • **19 fraught** [frɔ:t] stressful, tense • **21/22 untenable** (formal) incapable of being defended • **23 with all due respect** (formal) expression used to communicate polite disagreement • **gratitude** *Dankbarkeit* • **26 Basic Instinct** controversial thriller (1992) with explicit sex scenes and graphic depiction of violence – it has been criticized by the LGBT community. • **27 to cite** (here:) to mention • **nods** (here:) references • **28 homage** [ˈhɑ:mɪdʒ] s.th. said or done to show respect for s.o.

Page 366

• **1 to suspect** *vermuten* • **2 randy** (coll., BE) sexually excited • **5 offensive** insulting • **5/6 LGBT community** (abbreviation) lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender community • **8 to head out** (coll. AE) to leave • **17 to pull out** (here:) to start to drive • **10 to pull over** to park somewhere • **24/25 to settle in** (here:) to prepare yourself before starting with s.th.

Page 367

• **4 evolutionary** gradually changing and developing • **8 strung out** (fig.) as if affected by drug use • **9 to unleash s.th. on s.o.** to suddenly allow a strong force to affect s.o. • **12 to frown upon s.o.** to show your disapproval with a facial expression, (here:) to be sent a frown as an icon • **13 surveillance** [sɜ:rˈveɪləns] constant observation • **13 tradeoff** s.th. in exchange • **17 ilk** type, kind • **23 dumb** [dʌm] (coll., AE) stupid • **24 to supersede** (formal) to replace s.th., especially s.th. older or less effective • **25 Sasquatch** [ˈsæskwɑ:tʃ] legendary ape-like creature said to live in the Pacific Northwest of North America • **family tree** *Stammbaum*

Page 368

• **3/4 unrestrained** not held back • **4 Manifest Destiny**, cf. below:

> Manifest Destiny: originally, a phrase believed to have been coined by John O'Sullivan in 1845 to express the belief that it was the God-given right and destiny of the USA to also occupy the North American continent west of the Mississippi to the Pacific coast. The phrase also expressed the idea that Americans had a special mission to form a superior society to that in the Old World. Native Americans had no place in this scheme.

• **5 to regain** to get back • **7 vocal** (here:) loud and clear • **9 insidious** [ɪnˈsɪdiəs] slowly causing great harm without being noticed • **10 to check** to stop • **11 to opt out** to decide to no longer participate in s.th. • **14 blather** (coll.) nonsensical talk • **16 blowhard** (coll., AE) loud, arrogant boaster • **25 eerie** strange, frightening • **27 pact** agreement

Page 369

• **6 ramifications** (plural) consequences, complications • **8 to retreat** to withdraw, to move away • **10 to rewind, rewound, rewound** *zurückspulen* • **spool** (here:) the video just made • **11 offending** (here:) undesirable • **14 to witness** to see an event unfolding • **19 playback** method of viewing what has just been recorded • **19 unerring** unfailing • **19/20 moral compass** (fig.) moral integrity • **21 to erase** to delete • **26 empathetic** being able to understand another person's feelings • **27 to abide by s.th.** (formal) to accept s.th.

Page 370

• **1 preternatural** more than what is natural or regular • **7 role model** (fig.) *Vorbild* • **to stay the course** (fig.) to go on doing s.th. until the end in spite of difficulties • **12 friction** tension, conflicts • **17 assaulting** (here:) awful and unavoidable • **22 gamification** turning s.th. into a computer game • **shelter allotment** arrangement for homeless people to find a place to sleep and eat • **24 Nara period** era in Japanese history, 710 -784 AD • **26 Oakland** city opposite San Francisco • **San Jose** [ˌsæn hoʊˈzeɪ] city in western California located within Silicon Valley

© Westermann

Page 371

• **2 strife** conflict • **3 inefficiency** (here:) any activity that wastes money and time • **block** *Häuserblock* • **4 application** *Anwendung* • **5 digital community** people who deal with programming and computer technology • **8 wired** (coll.) overly excited • **9 on constant alert** (here:) continuously stimulated • **11 demonstrably** [ˈdemənstrəbli] in a manner that is clear to see • **13 to breeze** (coll.) to move quickly in a certain direction • **16 despondent** in despair, disheartened • **outraged** extremely angry • **18 dealing with MS no less** even dealing with MS • **21 to cease** (formal) to stop • **26 PC** (abbreviation) personal computer

Page 372

• **2 pressing** requiring immediate action • **4 to chip away at s.th.** (fig.) to gradually deal with s.th. • **5 to stun** to surprise very much • **6 with a clean slate** (here:) with everything taken care of • **7 latent** [ˈleɪtnt] (here:) still waiting to be dealt with • **8 Twin Falls** city in Idaho • **rundown** explanation, description • **24 insurance** Versicherung • **25 honorary member** *Ehrenmitglied* • **27 guild** [gɪld] *Zunft* • **28 to flatter** *schmeicheln*

Page 373

• **4/5 to evaporate** (fig.) to disappear • **5 mist** cloud just above the ground • **5/6 pet grooming chain** chain of businesses that brushes and washes the hair of pets • **9 to amend** to change, esp. words of a text • **12 to clarify** to make clear, to explain • **13/14 to raise awareness of s.th.** to bring people's attention to s.th. • **14 bison** [ˈbaɪsn] large wild mammal found in North America and Europe • **19 to dip** to lower • **20 multiple** several • **22 overall** *insgesamt*

Page 374

• **1 essay** [ˈeseɪ] *Aufsatz* • **4 self-righteous** *selbstgerecht* • **waste** (here:) useless person • **9 blizzard** heavy snowstorm • **11 noonday** (literary) at noon • **11/12 four-thousand-feet** 1,219.2 m • **12 drop** distance from a higher point to a lower point • **13 vision** (here:) plans for the future • **15 tech** (abbreviation) technology department • **16 to take s.th. down** (here:) to remove • **18 analog** (here:) without the use of a computer or internet • **25 to eradicate** to completely get rid of s.th. • **smallpox** *Pocken* • **26 to pledge** to promise • **28 quid pro quo** (Latin) s.th. given in exchange for s.th. else

Page 375

• **1 acidic** *sauer* • **3 to heighten** to increase • **5 to betray** *verraten* • **10 to muffle** to make s.th. quieter by covering it • **fathomless** bottomless • **high-pitched** (sound) high • **11 to drown** to cause to die due to being unable to breathe underwater • **17 rip** *Riss* • **24 disgusting** *entsetzlich* • **25 patch** small area • **27 to reassure s.o.** to say s.th. to s.o. that makes this person less worried

Page 376

• **1 encouragement** *Ermutigung* • **2 to mess with s.o.'s head** (coll.) to make s.o. upset, anxious or confused • **6 to be reckoned with** to be taken seriously • **10 conditioner** liquid to improve the quality and appearance of your hair • **18 to substitute** to replace • **19 brand** *Marke* • **22 steady** constant, regular • **24 refreshing** pleasantly different • **27 Columbus** city in Ohio • **Brisbane** city in Australia

Page 377

• **1 via** [ˈvaɪə] by means of • **2 to correspond** (here:) to communicate • **4 extended** lengthy • **8 processed** (here:) digitalized • **15/16 to abandon s.o.** to leave s.o. without the intention of returning

Page 378

• **1 credenza** sideboard • **2 portable** portable electronic device (*Gerät*) • **13 distinct** unique, special • **20 to face-rec** (abbreviation) to determine by facial recognition • **22 fed** (coll.) US Federal Government • **DMV** Department of Motor Vehicles (USA): state agency where motor vehicles and drivers' licences are registered

© Westermann

Page 379

• **2 timeline** horizontal line to represent a period of time • **5 a couple** a few • **13 to utter** (formal) to speak • **17 scantily clad** wearing hardly any clothes • **19 desperate for s.th.** very much longing for s.th. • **23 to accelerate** (here:) to get faster • **26/27 paroxysm** [ˈpærəksɪzəm] sudden, violent emotion • **27 to emit** (formal) to give off • **to grunt** to make a low, short sound in the throat • **arrival** (here:) orgasm

Page 380

• **1 contentment** feeling of satisfaction • **2 comforter** (AE) thick cover for a bed • **7 strenuous** [ˈstrenjuəs] requiring great effort • **26 disgust** strong dislike, aversion

Page 381

• **9 self-satisfied** *selbstgefällig*

Page 382

• **1 grand** (here:) *großartig* • **2 epic** (here:) very impressive • **3 innovator** s.o. who makes changes by introducing new ideas • **4 to greenlight s.th.** (coll.) to approve of s.th. • **13 to grant s.o. s.th.** *jdm etwas gewähren* • **21/22 acknowledgement** [əkˈnɑːlɪdʒmənt] sign of recognition • **23 broadly** *breit* • **24 to dig, dug, dug in** (coll.) to start

Page 383

• **3 gang** (coll.) guys (coll.) • **5 visionary** having great and original ideas for the future • **legislator** person in a position to participate in the passing of new laws • **6 daresay** *ich meine* • **8 to take the pledge to do s.th.** to make a solemn promise to do s.th. • **9 public servant** elected politician • **14 Manhattan Project**, cf. below:

> The Manhattan project was a secret American project from 1942 to 1946 that resulted in the development of two atomic bombs that were dropped on Nagasaki and Hiroshima in August 1945.

• **15 Edison's Menlo Park lab**, cf. below:

> Menlo Park Lab: Thomas Edison's research laboratory in the 1870s and early 1880s. Edison (1847 – 1931) was a famous inventor who during his time in Menlo Park created inventions such as the phonograph and a commercially viable lightbulb.

• **16 to dovetail** [ˈdʌvteɪl] to fit together well with s.th. else • **22 clear** (here:) transparent • **24 figurehead** a person in an important position but in name only • **to shield** (fig.) to prevent from being seen by the public • **backroom** (fig.) those who really have the political power and are not known to the public • **27 to see to s.th.** to make sure s.th. happens • **steep** (here:) very large • **discount** *Rabatt* • **28 server capacity** the amount of data that can be uploaded and downloaded on the internet

Page 384

• **5 polling place** place where you can vote • **6 desolate** [ˈdesələt] deserted, joyless • **to dissolve** (film) to slowly disappear and be replaced by s.th. else • **10 eligible** entitled, legally allowed • **to go down the line** (here:) to go from the national to the local level • **12 county** *Kreis* • **21 ease** lack of difficulty • **21 motor voter bill** law in the USA that automatically registers you to vote when you apply for number plates for your motor vehicle • **22 to register** (here:) to register to vote – unlike Germany, in America you must register with the local Board of Elections before voting • **23 to impact** to affect • **turnout** (here:) the number of people who actually vote

Page 385

• **7 frayed** shabby, with loose threads • **10 knack** [næk] (coll.) special ability • **11 DC** Washington, DC: the capital of the USA • **13 Uncle Sam** figure in political cartoons to symbolize the USA • **14 outfit** clothing • **15 to guffaw** [gəˈfɔː] to laugh noisily • **16 meat** (fig.) essence • **19 goosebumps** *Gänsehaut* • **21/22 Social Security number** *Sozialversicherungsnummer* • **22 verifiable** able to be confirmed to be correct

© Westermann

Page 386

• **10 for one** used to emphasise that s.o. holds a certain opinion, even if others do not • **verbal** spoken • **commitment** (here:) promise to do s.th. **10/11 member of Congress** (here:) member of the House of Representatives • **11 senator** member of the US Senate, of which there are 100 • **to push** (coll.) to strongly support • **17 grumbling** complaining • **sidelines** (here:) position of those not participating • **18 to neglect to do s.th**. to not do s.th. due to carelessness or forgetfulness • **19 fringe** extremist, far from the majority opinion • **wedge** (here:) having to do with a political issue that is very divisive • **23 electorally** with regard to elections

Page 387

• **10 to alight on s.th.** (fig.) to settle on s.th. • **11 stern** *sehr ernst* • **12 to gather yourself** (fig.) to prepare yourself for s.th. difficult • **13 to forge ahead** (fig.) to move forward quickly in spite of obstacles • **16 to outline** to describe, to sketch • **20 practiced in** already experienced in • **pre-emptive** taking action before there is an actual need to do so • **22 to connect the dots** (fig.) to determine how various factors fit together

Page 388

• **4 to bob** (here:) to make a short, quick movement up and down • **indication** sign • **5 leap** (here:) movement in the right direction • **9 shuffling** nervous movement of the feet on the floor • **13 brusquely** [ˈbrʌskli] abruptly • **14 to regain** to get back again • **15 resistance** *Widerstand* • **17 mandatory** (here:) required by law • **22 draft** *Einberufung*, cf. below

> From 1940 to 1973 all American men between 18 and 25 were required to register with their local draft board and could be expected to serve in the armed forces. Since 1973 the US armed forces have been all-voluntary. Registering is still required.

• **garbage** (AE) rubbish • **to serve on juries** *Geschworene, Geschworener sein*, cf. below:

> All American citizens can be called for jury duty in either a state or a federal court between the ages of 18 and 65.

Page 389

• **4 to propose** to suggest • **5 to counter** to reply with an opposing opinion • **10 polls** polling station, polling place • **11 unfeasible** not possible to achieve • **12 to enforce a law** to make sure people obey a certain law • **13 voting roll** list of registered voters • **18 challenge** *Herausforderung* • **22 to favor s.th.** to prefer s.th. • **25 to shade s.th. with s.th.** (fig.) to slightly alter s.th. with s.th. • **27 straggler** (fig.) person who is the last to act

Page 390

• **5 to duplicate** to make a copy of s.th. • **7 parking ticket** official notice that you have parked illegally and must pay a fine • **8 inconvenience** [ˌɪnkənˈviːniəns] anything that causes problems or difficulties • **11 interface** point of connection to a computer • **infinitely** (fig.) enormously • **12 patchwork** (here:) chaotic system • **14 to facilitate** (here:) to process • **14/15 to leap at the chance** (fig.) to eagerly accept an opportunity • **21 valid** legitimate, justified • **22 to snicker** to laugh unpleasantly because s.o. has made a mistake • **from scratch** (fig.) with no previous preparation • 25 **platform** (computer) computer program • **26 from the ground up** (fig.) from scratch • **ludicrous** absurd • **27/28 electorate** people entitled to vote

Page 391

• **1 regret** *Reue* • **2 defiance** [dɪˈfaɪəns] open resistance • **dismissive** showing you don't take s.o.'s opinion seriously • **5 to be disinclined to do s.th.** to be reluctant to do s.th. • **8 feds** (coll.) the US Federal Government • **10 to factor s.th. in** to take s.th. into account • **16 grimly** gloomily, seriously • **to assess s.o.** to make a judgment about s.o. • **17 anew** (formal) again • **22 ordinance** law or regulation • **25 verifiable** [ˈverɪfaɪəbl] able to be confirmed • **27 poll** [poʊl] (here:) *Umfrage*

© Westermann

Page 392

• **1 misinterpretation** act of not interpreting s.th. correctly • **bastardization** the process of changing s.th. in such a way that it is less valuable or invalid • **3 lacerating** [ˈlæsəreɪtɪŋ] (fig., formal) causing sharp pain on the skin • **4 to pivot** to turn • **8 to conceive of s.th.** [kənˈsiːv] to form an idea of s.th. • **12 inherent** being an essential part, intrinsic • **14 ill** (here:) serious problem • **16 semblance** similarity • **17 instantaneous** [ˌɪnstənˈteɪniəs] (here:) the results determined immediately • **20 bay** San Francisco Bay • **21 out of your mind** (here:) unable to think properly

Page 393

• **2 Market Street** main street in San Francisco • **Bay Bridge** series of bridges over San Francisco Bay • **4 rock on** (coll.) Continue with your activity! • **5 starstruck** very excited about seeing a celebrity • **6 stalky** (coll.) clumsy • **7 to descend** (here:) to walk down a set of stairs • **14 poised** [pɔɪzd] confident and calm • **17 in the wake of s.th.** (fig.) following s.th. • **22 heat** (here:) strong emotions • **23 her stomach sank** (fig.) she became very discouraged • **24 lunatic** crazy person • **25 crank** person with crazy ideas • **tin-foil** *Alufolie* – tin-foil hat: hat normally made by children to represent a helmet • **26 reference** *Anspielung*

Page 394

• **1 libation** [laɪˈbeɪʃn] (formal, humorous) alcoholic drink • **glittering** • **2 brewery** *Brauerei* • **patio** [ˈpætioʊ] large surface for outdoor seating, dining etc. • **6 to aim** to point in a certain direction • **7 home studying** (here:) preparing for an exam • **11 dizzy** (here:) making you dizzy (*schwindlig*) • **13 to pat** to strike lightly with the open hand • **to tap** to hit lightly and quickly with your hand or fingers • **14 to pivot** (here:) to turn in many different directions • **haywire clock** (coll.) clock with the hands moving crazily • **19 to slur** to pronounce words indistinctly as when drunk • **Manhattan** cocktail made with vermouth and whisky • **20 unwittingly** not aware of the situation, not intentionally • **to spill s.th.** *etwas verschütten* • **23 the Embercadero** artificial waterfront in San Francisco • **26 divinity student** student at a theological college • **26/27 to head for the priesthood** (coll.) to prepare to be a priest

Page 395

• **1 Palo Alto** city near San Francisco, in which Stanford University, Skype, Hewlett-Packard and Tesla are located • **removed from s.th.** (coll.) having lost all interest in s.th. • **6 millennium, millennia** (plural) period of a thousand years after the birth of Christ • **7 swallow** *Schluck* • **9 halo** [ˈheɪloʊ] circle of light often portrayed above the head of a saint • **12 to slam s.th.** to hit s.th. on a surface with force • **to rattle** *klappern* • **13/14 All things are naked and opened unto the eyes of God.**, cf. below:

> "Neither is there any creature that is not manifest in his sight: but all things are naked and opened unto the eyes of him with whom we have to do." Hebrews 4:13

• **15 blank** expressionless • **16 to scoff** to mock s.o. • **pull** (here:) large swallow • **17/18 to cast judgment upon s.o.** (formal) to decide if s.o.'s behaviour is sinful or not • **18 to articulate** to express in words • **19 to channel** to aim in a certain direction • **to deliver** (here:) to distribute • **23 to burst** i.e. to burst out laughing • **24 to cackle** to laugh in a noisy, unpleasant manner • **26 to swirl** (here:) to move unsteadily forward with movements to the left and right • **27 complete** i.e. with his drink in hand • **to ramble** (here:) to walk in a confused manner • **crookedly** in a manner not in a straight line

Page 396

• **1 to pass out** (here:) to suddenly fall asleep because of too much alcohol consumption • **3 bleary** unable to see properly because of being exhausted • **12 to spur s.th.** to make s.th. happen sooner • **13 to alert s.o.** to warn s.o. about s.th. dangerous • **14 fever** (fig.) state of great excitement and energy • **15 to prototype** to make the first model of s.th. that will be the basis for mass production • **17 to roll out** (fig.) to introduce • **20 moxie** (coll., AE) courage, nerve, determination • **24 to erupt** (here:) to suddenly occur with a lot of noise • **25/26 contained** suppressed, controlled

© Westermann

Page 397

• **2 to honor** *ehren* • **5 fervent** (here:) strong • **9 spirited** energetic, lively • **font** (computer) size and style of lettering • **striped** *mit Streifen* • **11 to weigh in on s.th.** (fig.) to contribute your opinion on a decision about s.th. • **14 pop-up notice** (computer) small message that suddenly appears on the computer screen • **15 turnaround** (here:) amount of time needed to reveal the results • **20 bookended** (fig.) placed on the left and right sides • **28 to arc** to form a large curve

Page 398

• **4 gist** general idea • **11 to come, came, come up with s.th.** (fig.) to think s.th. up • **13/14 utility** usefulness • **24 to burst** (here:) to suddenly express s.th.

Page 399

• **2 troubled** (fig.) stormy • **6 engaged** interested and participating • **6 populace** [ˈpɑːpjələs] the people living in a country or area • **7 inherent** basic, intrinsic • **progressivism** liberal ideas • **8 to upend** (here:) to completely change • **10 to accost** to approach s.o. and speak to this person aggressively • **on the verge of** very close to• **14 much less** (here:) certainly, even more • **16 tryout** test • **18 to tabulate** to arrange numbers or data in a table • **20 amid** (formal) among • **21 to buzz** (here:) to speak excitedly • **22/23 painting of the Constitutional Convention** famous 1940 painting by Howard Chandler Christy (1872 - 1952) of the Founding Fathers at the signing of the US Constitution in 1787 – not all the men in the picture are wearing powdered wigs (*Perücke*). • **23/24 waistcoat** a sleeveless upper-body garment with buttons down the front worn over a shirt • **24 stiffly** *steif* • **25 passably** in a manner that is just good enough • **26 purveyor** (fig.) normally: person who provides food and supplies – (here:) s.o. who supports a certain viewpoint • **26 innately** inherently • **flawed** imperfect, with mistakes

Page 400

• **3 some incremental improvement** small, gradual improvement • **5/6 the only chance of direct democracy**, cf. below

All the signers of the US Constitution were indeed wealthy men, some of whom greatly feared the masses. For this reason, the Electoral College was devised to prevent the direct election of a President. Until the end of the 19th century, Senators were indirectly elected by the state governments. The Constitution, when crafted, tacitly accepted the existence of slavery in a passage about the number of representatives from each state in the House of Representatives. The Constitution leaves the issue of voting rights to the individual states. Initially, the ownership of property was required by some states, and women and freed slaves were not allowed to vote. Even after the abolition of slavery, Jim Crow and poll taxes prevented African Americans from exercising their right to vote. Most of these inequalities have been addressed by legislation and Supreme Court decisions, but more still needs to be done. Since everyone in Germany with a place of residence is obliged to register with the local government, German citizens are automatically sent a notification to vote. Every German citizen is granted an ID card which they should carry with them at all times. However, in America, there is no mandatory registration with the local government and the federal government does not issue ID cards. American citizens do not automatically receive a notification to vote. You must first register with the local board of elections. A driver's licence, birth certificate, or a social security number serve the same purpose as an ID card. Students are encouraged to investigate the current issues about voting in America.

• **8 to succumb** [səˈkʌm] **to s.th.** to no longer be able to resist s.th. • **11 terse** using few words, brusque • **12 to rig s.th.** to alter s.th. in a dishonest way to change the outcome • **15 to shame s.o.** to make s.o. feel ashamed • **16 pliable** [ˈplaɪəbl] easy to influence • **facet** aspect • **17 to disassemble s.o.** (fig.) to make s.o. unable to function properly • **20 to trace** (here:) to determine the source of a communication and record it

Page 401

• **8 to be at s.o.'s beck and call** (idiom) to always be ready to carry out s.o.'s orders • **15 evil** *böse* • **to rein** [reɪn] **s.th. in** (fig.) *etwas im Zaum halten* • **19 loony** (coll.) crazy • **22 messed up** (coll.) in a confused state • **24 to pivot** (here:) to suddenly change direction • **25 to annex** *annektieren* • **. . . Stalin annexed Eastern Europe** Stalin installed communist regimes in Eastern Europe after World War Two, thereby creating the Iron Curtain"

© Westermann

Page 402

• **2 plankton** [ˈplæŋktən] (fig.) very small animal and plant life in oceans and seas that constitutes the food source of many sea creatures • **to buy** (coll.) to accept • **4 to devour** [dɪˈvaʊər] (fig.) to quickly and uncritically make use of s.th. • **17 entity** (here:) person or business • **18 to hang up** *auflegen* • **26/27 at the ready** (fig.) prepared to start

Page 403

• **1 keystroke** *Tastenanschlag* • **2 to suspend s.th.** to temporarily stop s.th. • **3 delight** joy • **17 It shall be done** cf. Mathew 18:19 • **23/24 to bask in s.th.** (fig.) to take pleasure in s.th., especially the admiration of others • **27 John, Paul, Ringo** members of the Beatles (1960 - 1970) • **28 riot** (here:) loud and uncontrollable behaviour

Page 404

• **2 tied** having equal scores, having the same results • **3 to precede** (formal) to happen or come before • **sober** serious, rational • **4 the White House** i.e. the US President • **constituents** (here:) all voters • **5 foreign policy** *Außenpolitik* • 9 **mastermind** person who plans complicated criminal activities • **9/10 Mohammed Khalil al-Hamed** fictitious name • **10 rural** in the countryside • **11 likelihood** probability • **moderate** not too much • **11/12 collateral damage** (military) civilians killed • **13 to catch, caught, caught your breath** (here:) to stop breathing for a moment because of shock or surprise • **17 pros and cons** arguments for or against s.th. • **20 to be rid of s.o.** to no longer have to deal with s.o. • **21 tally** total amount that has been recorded • **22 to favor s.th.** to approve of s.th., to consider s.th. good • **hush** sudden moment of silence • **27 to cast a vote** *seine Stimme abgeben* • **28 frozen** (here:) inactive

Page 405

• **6 to tally** to determine the total • **10 to pat** to touch lightly several times with your hand • **to file out** to leave one after the other • **11 monumental** major, enormous • **17 startup** firm that has just been founded • **25 devastated** very upset, shocked

Page 406

• **2 to stab** to push a knife into s.o. for the purpose of killing s.o. • **7 to hold it together** (fig.) to remain calm and collected • **9 two-faced** insincere, untrustworthy • **10/11 trigger** (gun) *Abzug* • **15 natural** (here:) face to face • **16 to catapult yourself forward to s.o./s.th.** (fig.) to rush towards s.o./s.th. • **wraparound** (here:) completely surrounding • **19 elated** [iˈleɪtɪd] very happy • **24 to sense** *spüren* • **26 to go along** to pretend that you accept s.o.'s viewpoint or action

Page 407

• **3 to knock s.o. down a notch** (fig.) to slightly lower s.o.'s score, to slightly lessen s.o.'s importance • **to fare** to succeed or not • **5 gosh** euphemism for "God" • **5/6 to be in the works** to be in process of being completed • **10/11 to match s.th.** to be as good as s.th. • **11 glossy** (fig.) shining • **12 whoa** (here:) wow • **22 to measure s.th.** (here:) to carefully consider s.th. before acting or speaking • **25 PartiRank leap** i.e. quick rise in the hierarchy • **to curry favor with s.o.** to give insincere praise to s.o. in a position of power for personal benefit • **27 boost** (here:) s.th. that helps to improve your position in a firm • **edge** advantage

Page 408

• **6 high-water mark** (here:) occasion when a family member was famous for an achievement • **8 haywire** (coll.) crazy • **10/11 heritage** (here:) family history and tradition • **12 to appeal to s.o.** to cause s.o. to be interested in or attracted to s.th. • **24 foggy-headed** (fig.) in a state of confusion • **25 to trump s.o.** to get the better of s.o. • **26 to appoint** to name

Page 409

• **4 proximity** [prɑːkˈsɪməti] state of being near s.o./s.th. • **6 head start** advantageous position • **8 to succeed** to replace • **11 distraction** (here:) mental confusion • **13 gamesmanship** schemes and tactics to win against a rival • **15 to slip off the path** (here:) to no longer co-operate with the goals of The Circle • **21 sentiment** feeling • **23 mistakes in her diet** There have been numerous studies in Scotland and elsewhere which claim that there is a correlation between obesity, too much red meat and sugar, and cancer. • **24/25 to tighten** *enger werden* • **25/26 paramilitaries** force with a military structure trying to overthrow a government • **28 trophy** [ˈtroʊfi]

© Westermann

Page 410

• **1 opprobrium** [əˈproʊbriəm] (formal) severe criticism • **6 animosity** hostility, hatred • **6 blasphemous** [ˈblæsfəməs] (here:) showing behaviour or language that goes against the accepted policy • **flash** (here:) sudden idea • **14 to aggregate** (here:) to combine • **15 manageable** easy to deal with • **20 idly** [ˈaɪdli] with no particular purpose • **25 stock-still** without any movement • **26 to contort** to twist into an unusual shape • **raging** being very angry

Page 411

• **4 astronomical** (fig.) amazingly high • **5 sustainably sourced** (here:) using wood that can be easily replaced by new trees • **6 wholesaler** *Großhändler, -in* • **8 income bracket** those within a certain range of income • **10 demographic** group of people with certain characteristics within society • **12 T-ball** (AE) baseball modified for youngsters • **14 Chapel Hill** town in central North Carolina • **27/28 Eastern Michigan University** public university near Detroit

Page 412

• **3 résumé** [ˈrezəmeɪ] (AE) curriculum vitae (BE) • **5 to keep track of s.th./s.o.** *jdn/etwas im Auge behalten* • **7 birding** (coll.) birdwatching • **10 ecstatic** delighted • **16 to misconstrue** to understand s.o.'s words or actions wrongly • **17 bed and breakfast** room to sleep in and breakfast in a private home or small hotel • **18 deal** (here:) special offer • **20 B & B rates** cost of staying overnight in a bed and breakfast establishment • **23 to elucidate** (formal) to explain • **24 jet-skiing** riding a small motorized boat on water

Page 413

• **2 sequence** (here:) scene • **3 Bruce Willis** (1955 -) American actor, especially known for his *Die Hard* films • **8 pitcher** s.o. who tries to convince people how good s.th. is • **13 to clench** to close tightly • **14 to jerk** to make a sudden movement • **done** (here:) finished with an orgasm • **18 self-evident** obvious • **25 to achieve s.th.** *etwas fertigbringen* • **to wipe** *wischen* • **waist** *Taille*

Page 414

• **17 head on fire** (fig.) extremely angry • **22 rabid** [ˈræbɪd] with rabies [ˈreɪbiːz] (*Tollwut*) • **28 to clear** to make blank

Page 415

• **2 to comply** [kəmˈplaɪ] to do as s.o. requests • **7 to pound s.th.** to hit s.th. hard several times • **18 purity** [ˈpjʊrəti] state of being pure • **21 dreadlocks** long, thick coils of hair as is typical in Jamaica • **22 freckles** *Sommersprossen* • **24 braintrust** (fig.) brain trust: group of advisors or experts • **25 intently** in a manner showing great concentration

Page 416

• **1 blank** (here:) with no other furniture and bare walls • **3 senior** high ranking • **7 aloof** [əˈluːf] distant • **9 assembly** gathering, large meeting • **12 armageddon** (fig.) terrible catastrophe for the whole world • **20 aspirant** [ˈæspərənt] (formal) applicant, candidate • **21 on the spot** (fig.) immediately • **24 stock options** stocks (*Aktien*) given as a gift to employees – they can later be sold if desired. • **25 in short order** (fig.) very soon

Page 417

• **5 slur** [slɜːr] insulting term • **9 to glow** (here:) to shine • **to lacquer** [ˈlækər] to cover wood with a liquid that gives it a shiny surface • **9 exceedingly** extremely • **12 deal** special business agreement • **15 rebate** refund for part of the purchase price • **16 frequent flyer miles** after flying a certain number of miles customers are rewarded with either free flying miles or hotel stays • **19 by extension** therefore • **25 racial profiling** suspecting s.o. has criminal intentions on the basis of race or skin colour – students are encouraged to research the Black Lives Matter movement in this regard • **28 surgically** (fig.) very precisely

© Westermann

Page 418

• **1 urban** of/in a city • **2 unaware** not knowing or noticing • **3/4 driving while black or brown** (AE) term used to describe the police requiring African Americans or Mexican Americans to pull over on suspicion of criminal intention on the basis of racial profiling • **4 evenly** calmly • **6 to frisk s.o.** *jdn abtasten* • **to strip s.o. of his or her rights** (fig.) to take away s.o.'s civil rights • **dignity** *Würde* • **9 crass** stupid, insensitive • **10 proactive** causing rather than simply reacting to a change • **12 practices** i.e. racial profiling, pulling over black drivers • **animosity** hatred, hostility • **14 police cruiser** police car • **15 suspect** *Verdächtige(r)* • **18 to glow** to shine with a dull colour • **19 to bath** (fig.) to completely cover • **spotlight** stage light • **20 gel** [dʒel] (here:) thin transparent sheet used over a stage light to colour it • **to single s.o. out** to select s.o. from a group • **21 repeat offender** (law) person who repeatedly commits crimes • **22 to convict s.o.** (law) to decide in a court of law that s.o. is guilty of a crime and will be accordingly punished • **22/23 petty theft** (law) stealing things of little value • **23 drug possession** having drugs on you • **victimless crime** crime which does not involve a person being harmed • **24 frame** *Rahmen* • **25 innocuous** [ɪˈnɑːkjuəs]**-enough** (formal) seemingly harmless • **28 armed robbery** robbery committed with a weapon • **assault** physical attack

Page 419

• **5 prior** [ˈpraɪər] previous • **conviction** *Verurteilung* • **12 ankle bracelet** (here:) device worn around a criminal's ankle (*Fußknöchel*) that allows the police to track the criminal's location • **19 offender** person who has committed a crime • **20 subject to s.th.** likely to be affected by s.th. • **tampering** act of changing s.th. without permission • **22 violator** offender • **to expunge** [ɪkˈspʌndʒ] (formal) (here:) to remove from the records • **26 offense** crime • **registry** official record book • **28 in their midst** among them

Page 420

• **2 to tag** (here:) to provide some kind of identification • **4/5 to shake s.o. down** (coll., AE) to stop and search s.o. • **4 baggy pants** loosely fitting trousers favoured by some teenagers and rap stars • **5 career criminal** person whose main source of income is criminal activities • **6 low-level offender** person who does not commit serious crimes • **9/10 intelligence agency** *Nachrichtendienst* • **10 web** *Netzwerk* • **11 co-conspirator** partner in crime • **13 associate** [əˈsoʊʃɪeɪt] acquaintance, partner • **14 mob boss** head of a mafia gang • **22 to glow** [gloʊ] (fig.) to show euphoria • **24 cantaloupe** [ˈkæntəluːp/loʊp] melon with orange flesh • **25 shyly** [ʃaɪli] *scheu* • **crookedly** (here:) not with a straight mouth • **28 commonality** *Gemeinsamkeit*

Page 421

• **1 block** *Häuserblock* • **5 to denote** to represent • **7 neighborhood watch** organization of neighbours that started in the 1960s – they alert the police when they see s.th./s.o. suspicious • **18 print** fingerprint • **19 body profile** characteristics of a person's body

Page 422

• **1 to trigger** to cause to react • **8 to neutralize s.o.** (here:) to make s.o. no longer a danger • **10 to ID s.o.** (coll. AE) to reveal s.o.'s identity • **to vouch** [vaʊtʃ] **for s.o.** (formal) *sich für jdn bürgen* • **16 intruder** person not authorized to enter a place or building • **to prod s.o.** (here:) to interrupt s.o. for the purpose of correcting • **17 rare** not occurring often • **17/18 ill-intent** intending to do s.th. bad • **18 to feature** (here:) to show • **to stalk** (here:) to move quietly and slowly • **24 ex-con** (abbreviation) former convict: person who has spent time in prison

Page 423

• **8 anomaly** [əˈnɑːməli] s.th. unexpected or not normal • **catch** (here:) difficulty, complication • **9 to violate** [ˈvaɪəleɪt] (formal) to break • **13 thorough** *gründlich* • **Good fences make good neighbors.** (proverb) Respecting other people's property/rights avoids conflicts. • **19 to pop through** (fig.) to suddenly be heard • **23 cue** [kjuː] signal to say s.th. • **26 domestic** at home • **27 to let s.th. register** (fig.) to allow people the time to fully comprehend s.th.

© Westermann

Page 424

• **1 perpetrator** [ˈpɜːrpətreɪtər] person who commits a crime • **3 monitor** (here:) device that watches over s.th./s.o. • **4 to couple** to join • **8 chef** [ʃef] head cook in a restaurant • **10 regularity** (here:) proper completion of tasks • **13 patent** [ˈpætnt] official document that confirms that s.o. has invented s.th. new that may not be copied • **19 composure** self-control, ability to remain calm • **23 to log** to document

Page 425

• **1 carbon dioxide** CO_2 • **4 featureless** without a nose, mouth, eyes, eyebrows • **9 to mime** to use gestures and facial expressions to communicate s.th. • **11 to mimic** to copy the way s.o. acts or speaks • **14 beneath** under, below • **16 screeching** high, shrill, piercing sound • **19 rage** great anger • **24 to flail on s.th.** to move around on s.th. without control

Page 426

• **11 entwined** (here:) held closely together • **17 boundary** limit • **20 to hook s.th./s.o. up with s.th./s.o.** (fig.) to connect s.th./s.o. with s.th./s.o. • **24 admirable** *bewundernswert* • **resolve** determination • **27 norm** standard considered normal

Page 427

• **1 troublemaker** s.o. who creates disciplinary problems • **4 to pinpoint s.th.** to locate s.th. with great precision • **6 loop** one of several strips of material at the top of trousers through which a belt is passed • **9 outlier** unusual case • **14 dominant** (here:) majority of • **15 to abuse** *missbrauchen* • 23 **relieved** *erleichtert*

Page 428

• **2/3 to dole s.th. out** (coll.) to give s.th. out • **8 blackhearted** (fig.) heartless • **10 white Irish slaves,** cf. below:

> In fact, there were never any Irish slaves in the sense of slaves sent to the New World, as those from Africa were. Many impoverished Irish and English men and women went to America as indentured servants: they had to work for no pay as servants for a number of years to pay off the passage across the Atlantic and then were free to start a new life. Cf. the information about the Irish rebellion in the 17th century mentioned below.

• **11 ringleader** head of a gang of criminals • **15/16 cross-referenced** confirmed with a number of independent sources • **16 descendant** *Nachkomme* • **18 to give yourself a break** (coll.) to not be too troubled by s.th. • **20 rough patch** (here:) time when there were dishonest or criminal ancestors • **mapped** (here:) included • **26 Klansman** member of the Ku Klux Klan, cf. below:

> The Ku Klux Klan was an organization founded after the Civil War in the southern USA. It has been revived many times in the 20th and 21st centuries and is essentially racist, against equal rights for African Americans, anti-Semitic and anti-Catholic.

• **27 to overthink s.th.** (coll.) to concern yourself too much with s.th. • **28 funny** (coll.) in a strange manner

Page 429

• **6 mass slaughter**, cf. below:

> There was an Irish rebellion in 1641 that sought to remove Protestant/English influence in Ireland. Oliver Cromwell (1599 – 1658) invaded Ireland with the forces of the English Parliament in 1649. The rebellion was put down with incredible brutality, including the atrocious slaughter of innocent civilians. By 1652, new laws were passed that limited the rights of the Roman Catholic population and confiscated their land. Many were forced to become indentured servants and were transported to England or to the New World. Annie's version of Irish history requires some correction. Students are encouraged to further research this period of English history.

© Westermann

• **10 caveman** *Höhlenmensch* • **21 to vindicate s.o.** (formal) to justify s.o., to prove s.o. to be right • **23 shrug** (fig.) feeling of indifference • **26 with human currency** (here:) with indentured servants who were transported to England or to the New World, but not the selling of Irish slaves

Page 430

• **1 to take s.th. in stride** (fig., AE) to deal with a difficult situation calmly and not let it bother you • **4 grim** unpleasant • **5 levity** humour • **6 to dissuade** to discourage • **9 true to form** (fig.) as to be expected • **12 ornery** [ˈɔːrnəri] (coll., AE) difficult to deal with, bad-tempered • **accusatory** suggesting s.o. is to blame for s.th. • **judgmental** being too quick to judge or criticize people • **15 to bring yourself to do s.th.** (idiom) to do s.th. you would rather not do • **19 to give s.o. pause** (fig.) to cause s.o. to think seriously about s.th. • **23 delicately** very carefully • **calibrated** (here:) adjusted

Page 431

• **7 to pop** (here:) to quickly fill with messages • **8 to bother with s.th.** to concern yourself with s.th. • **10 to feed** (here:) to encourage • **Sasquatch** Mercer is being compared to this primitive creature. • **11 to thump** to beat heavily • **14 Brownshirts** allusion to the NSDAP's paramilitary force, the SA (*Sturmabteilung*) • **17 *Triumph of the Will*** (1935), cf. below:

> *Triumph of the Will* was a Nazi propaganda film directed and produced by Leni Riefenstahl. The film is a stylized filming of the 1934 Nazi Party Congress in Nuremberg.

• **18 nudge** (fig.) push • **19 dense** (here:) thickly forested • **20 to map an area out** to determine the details of a certain area • **22 head start** advantage before s.th. starts

Page 432

• **2 to worship** *verehren* • **golden calf** allusion to the golden calf as mentioned in the Old Testament: Exodus 32:4 • **3 to hold, held, held out hope** (fig.) to still hope • **9/10 to strike, struck, struck s.o. down** to attack s.o. so that this person falls down • **15 ACLU**, cf. below:

> The ACLU (American Civil Liberties Union) is a non-profit organization in the USA whose mission it is to defend the civil rights of US citizens as enumerated in the Constitution, if necessary, in a court of law.

• **18 to measure** [ˈmeʒər] *messen* • **24 off the grid** disconnected from any contact with civilization

Page 433

• **1 refugee** *Flüchtling* • **hermit** *Eremit* • **3 great schism** [ˈskɪzəm] either the split between the Catholic Church and the Eastern Orthodox churches as of 1054 or the division within the Roman Catholic Church from 1378 to 1429, during which time there were several rival popes • **5 dome** (fig.) *Kuppel* • **12 natural habitat** area where an animal or plant is normally found • **Bigfoot** another name for Sasquatch • **14 to transcribe** to make a written record of s.th. • **14/15 subsite** website within a website • **15 Missoula** city in Montana • **16 faux** [foʊ] imitation, copy but made to seem real • **18 stubborn** *stur* • **19 beyond hope** hopeless • **beyond convincing** not capable of being convinced • **21 adjoining** (formal) next to s.th. • **22 major** very important • **22/23 to contextualize** *relativieren*

Page 434

• **1 rough** [rʌf] *rau, hart* • **5 jolly Olde** (humorous) Jolly Olde England: expression used to refer to a nostalgic view of English history and traditions • **17 Massa** (slave dialect) expression used by slaves in the southern USA to address their owner, a corruption of "Master" • **18 suspicious of s.o.** not trusting s.o. • **19 genetically pure** having certain unchanging genes • **intergenerational** from one generation to the next • **20 to let s.o. go** (coll.) *jdn entlassen* • **25 owning Irish people** Actually, these Irish people must have been indentured servants. • **27 Confederate** having to do with the Confederate States of America, the name adopted by the states in rebellion that fought against the North in the Civil War

© Westermann

Page 435

• **3 to wreak** [ri:k] **s.th. on s.o.** to cause s.o. great harm • **5 heritage** *Erbe* • **7 bluebloods** belonging to the nobility in the sense of the morally upright elite • **8 unimpeachable** (formal) *untadelig* • **18 storage** (computer) *Speicherung* • **24 shit** (vulgar) trouble • **25 poster child** (fig.) person with a public image who is identified with a certain cause

Page 436

• **6 to owe s.o. a favour** to be obligated to help so. because of services in the past • **7 quote-unquote** (here:) *ich zitiere Folgendes* • **7/8 to relieve s.o. of some his/her duties** (euphemism) to reduce s.o.'s responsibilities • **12 to lose your hold on s.th.** (fig.) to no longer be able to control s.th. • **13 volatile** [ˈvɑ:lətl] unstable • **rash** doing s.th. much too quickly without enough caution • **irrevocable** [ɪˈrevəkəbl] (formal) that can no longer be changed • **27 open marriage** marriage that permits affairs with other partners

Page 437

• **1/2 serial adultery** regularly having sexual relationships with people who are not the spouse • **4 eighties** 1980s • **5 nineties** 1990s • **definitive** (here:) undeniable • **7 kissy** (coll.) showing strong affection • **8 tit** (vulgar) breast • **10 stash** amount of s.th. that has been kept hidden • **11 garage sale** sale of household furniture, clothes, etc. in s.o.'s garage • **12 global** worldwide • **13 biker guy** motorcyclist • **14 prom** (AE) formal high school dance, usually at the end of the school year • **26 pier** [pɪr] structure built into a body of water, either as a landing place for ships or as a promenade • **27 to store** *lagern* • **warehouse** *Lagerhalle* • **28 to hang around s.th.** *herumlungern*

Page 438

• **3 twisted** (here:) sick • **4 to go on a bender** (fig.) to spend some time getting completely drunk or high • **5 stoned** (coll.) high on marijuana • **6 anniversary** wedding anniversary • **16 innocent** (here:) harmless • **17 frame** picture frame • **17/18 to stumble around** to walk about unsteadily • **26 to lean over** to bend down over s.th.

Page 439

• **5 fucked up** (vulgar) incredibly bad • **13 911** emergency number in the USA • **16 mentally disabled** *geistig behindert* • **17 deli** (abbreviation) delicatessen [ˌdelɪkəˈtesn] (AE): restaurant and store that sells or serves cheeses, prepared meats, sandwiches, or specialities from other countries • **to drown** *ertrinken* • **18 to choke on s.th.** to be unable to breathe because of the throat being blocked by s.th. • **20 disgusting** *widerlich*

Page 440

• **6/7 to take comfort in s.th.** (fig.) to find consolation in s.th. • **assent** agreement, approval • **8 disapprova**l *Missbilligung* • **9 chastely** (here:) innocently • **10/11 to surge** to suddenly increase • **12 to hoard** (here:) to keep everything to yourself • **13 to obfuscate** to deliberately make s.th. less easy to understand • **17 fluidly** *fließend* • **17/18 simultaneously** [ˌsaɪmlˈteɪniəsli] at the same time • **20 Cancun** resort (place where people go on holiday) in south-east Mexico • **upscale** appealing to wealthy people • **breakaway weekend** (fig.) weekend to escape from the pressures of work • **21 Prada** upscale Italian manufacturer of women's clothing and leather goods • **21/22 Converse** manufacturer of shoes • **25 to click** (coll.) to suddenly become clear

Page 441

• **2 heartfelt** deeply felt, earnest • **3 in solitude** alone • **4 communion** (formal) sharing thoughts and feelings • **witness** *Zeuge* • **8 hypocritical** [ˌhɪpəˈkrɪtɪkl] *heuchlerisch* • **10 purposely** *absichtlich* • **12 tantamount to s.th.** (formal) equivalent to s.th. • **to assume** *annehmen* • **13 straightforward** honest and open • **18 to trump s.th.** to get the better of s.th., to outdo s.th. • **19/20 temporary** only for a short time • **20 gain** (here:) advantage • **22 practice** use • **25 lucid** [ˈlu:sɪd] clear, easy to understand

© Westermann

Page 442

• **3/4 under the auspices** [ˈɔːspɪsɪz] (fig.) (here:) with the intention of • **to do your business** (euphemism) to go to the toilet • **9 most-favored** most popular• **12 admission** *Eingeständnis* • **16 recess** (fig.) hidden place • **17 misdeed** (formal) evil action • **23 impending** soon to happen • **25 compassion** *Mitgefühl* • **25 to cushion** [ˈkʊʃn] (fig.) to soften the effect of • **27 to harness s.th.** (fig.) to make use of s.th. powerful

Page 443

• **1 to emphathize with s.o.** to be able to understand another person's feelings • **5/6 to have a bearing on s.th./s.o.** to be related to or have an influence on s.th. • **13 to gain traction** (fig.) to become popular • **13/14 to rain on the parade** (fig.) to spoil s.o.'s pleasure or plans • **14 in DNA** (fig.) in s.o.'s genes • **24 legions at her back** (fig.) an enormous number of people supporting her

Page 444

• **2 avalanche** (fig.) *Lawine* • **9 to synthesize** (here:) *verarbeiten* • **16 backstage** rooms behind the stage • **17 stylist** person whose job involves advising people on their appearance (clothing, hair etc.) • **to orbit around s.th./s.o.** to move around s.th./s.o. in a circle • **18 to apply s.th. to s.o.** (here:) to place s.th. on s.o.'s skin

Page 445

• **5 appointed** prearranged • **7 to quell** to stop • **16 unmitigated** complete, absolute • **17 tidal** (fig.) overwhelming • • **20 rumor** *Gerücht* • **24/25 unrehearsed** not prepared ahead of time • **26 fugitive** criminal trying to avoid being caught by the police • **28 globe** *Globus*

Page 446

• **2 sane** sensible and reasonable • **6 Cleveland** city in Ohio • **13 guidance** advice • **17 facet** aspect • **18 justice** (here:) law enforcement agencies • **19 Osama bin Laden** (1957 - 2011) terrorist considered to be the mastermind of 9-11 – in 2011 he was killed in a covert operation ordered by President Obama • **D. B. Cooper** man who hijacked a plane in 1971 and extorted $200,000 – he has never been found • **infamous** notorious • **20 to remain on the lam** (coll., AE) to still not be captured by the police • **24 torso** [ˈtɔːrsoʊ] *Rumpf* • **mug-shot** (coll., AE) police photograph of a suspect • **measurements** *Maße* • **28 menace** [ˈmenəs] serious threat

Page 447

• **9/10 Dorothea Lange**, cf. below:

> Dorothea Lange (1895 – 1965) was an American photojournalist, especially remembered for documenting the suffering caused by the Great the Depression of the 1930s. Included in her work were photographs of farmers and their families caught in the environmental disaster that resulted from an unusually long drought in the 1930s, in parts of Texas, Oklahoma, Kansas, New Mexico, and Colorado, which came to be known as the Dust Bowl. A graphic description of this disaster can be found in John Steinbeck's 1939 novel, **The Grapes of Wrath**.

• **10 scarred** *vernarbt* • **15 triple** three times • **17 to starve** to die of hunger • **19 to seduce** *verführen* • **25 currently** at the moment • **26 to tick up** to move up step by step

Page 448

• **1/2 passport** *Reisepass* • **2 to revoke s.th.** (formal) to officially make s.th. no longer valid • **3 Brit** (coll.) person from Britain • **8 outcome** result of an action • **9 to bring, brought, brought s.th. to bear** (fig.) to make full use of s.th. • **17 Leeds** city in northern England • **18 to bundle up** to put on warm clothes • **blustery** very windy • **19 to band together** to form a group to achieve s.th. • **23 On your mark, get set, go!** *Auf die Plätze, fertig, los!* • **24 to draw, drew, draw s.th. down** to lower s.th. • **25 column** *Textspalte* • **highest-ranked** (here:) occurring most often • **28 hag** ugly, old woman • **28 Scarecrow** (*Vogelscheuche*) one of the protagonists in the 1900 novel *The Wonderful Wizard of Oz* by L. Frank Baum. A film adaptation was made in 1939.

© Westermann

Page 449

• **5 corollary** (here:) what might be considered to have a close resemblance • **7 prime** choicest, best • **16 indicator** sign that shows s.th. might be true • **17 initial** [ɪˈnɪʃl] first letter of a word or name • **18 to throw s.o. off** (here:) to cause s.o. to think they are searching for the wrong person • **casual** not taking s.th. very seriously • **pursuer** (here:) s.o. trying to find s.o. • **19 slight** just a bit • **signature** *Unterschrift* • **25 laundry** *Wäscherei* • **Swansea** city on the south coast of Wales • **28 to investigate** (here:) to search for and examine the facts and evidence that have to do with a crime

Page 450

• **1 lead** [li:d] (here:) clue • **2 riveted** (fig.) intensely focused on s.th. • **3 to weave, wove, woven** (fig): to move forward to the left and right to avoid hitting obstacles • **to steam** to produce steam *(Dampf)* • **4 cavernous** with a large space inside• **5 bent** not able to stand up straight • **5/6 to feed s.th.** (here:) to place into s.th. • **6 bedsheet** *Bettlacke* • **9 mannerism** particular manner of moving and speaking • **10 to glide** *gleiten* • **13 to root through s.th.** to search for s.th. by moving things about • **feral** as a wild animal that was once a pet • **22 pursuit** [pərˈsu:t] the act of chasing s.th./s.o. • **23 botched** (coll.) ruined because of incompetence • **24 to fumble** to act awkwardly • **to jostle** [ˈdʒɑ:sl] to move about wildly • **28 trapped** unable to escape

Page 451

• **3 defiant** [dɪˈfaɪənt] proudly disobedient or resistant • **throng** (literary) crowd • **4 to slip** *schlüpfen* • **gotcha** (coll.) got you • **9 angle** viewpoint • **9/10 to confirm** *bestätigen* • **13 mob** angry, violent crowd • **14 constable** (BE) police officer • **21 to trap s.o.** to find and capture s.o. • **22 to cut** (coll.) to shut off • **24 directive** instruction • **tech** (abbreviation) technician • **28 at s.o.'s disposal** available to s.o.

Page 452

• **8 to transfer s.th.** *etwas übertragen* • **snapshot** photo • **11 trail** path through the countryside • **to hike** *wandern* • **26 grade school** elementary school • **28 involved** having to do with s.th. • **28 yawning** (here:) very wide

Page 453

• **3/4 scuba apparatus** equipment for diving with an oxygen tank • **7 grocery** (AE) small supermarket • **10 liquor store** store that sells alcoholic beverages • **11 excruciating** [ɪkˈskru:ʃieɪtɪŋ] extremely painful • **12 to figure s.th. out** to work s.th. out • **13/14 to come into play** (idiom) to begin to operate or have an effect • **real estate site** house or apartment building • **rental histories** records of who rented an apartment or house • **20 to converge** to come together • **22 outlet** shop • **redwood** giant tree that grows in California and Oregon

Page 454

• **2/3 to do the math** (here:) to determine if the boy was the right age to be Mercer's son • **7 goateed** [goʊˈti:d] with a short, pointed beard on the chin • **8 sweat pants** *Traininghose* • **dead end** (fig.) *Sackgasse* • **9 to elapse** to pass, to go by • **11 slope** side of a mountain or hill • **12 winding** with many sharp curves • **18/19 familiarity** friendly, informal manner • **26 pickup** small truck with an open platform in the back • **28 locals** residents of a community • **28 camouflage** [ˈkæməflɑ:ʒ] **gear** clothing that makes it difficult to distinguish s.o. from their surroundings

Page 455

• **2 to chant** to repeatedly shout a phrase • **7 porch** veranda • **8 fishing pole** *Angelrute* • **stack** pile • **10 mantel** *Kaminsims* • **12 Yosemite** [joʊˈseməti:] Yosemite National Park in California • **13 to strike, struck, struck s.o.** (fig.) to suddenly come to s.o.'s mind • **15 unguarded** (here:) unrestrained • **filial** [ˈfiliəl] relating to a son or daughter • **21 beyond the shadow of doubt** (fig.) there being absolutely no doubt • **21 to shriek** to scream • **25 to descend upon s.o.** to come down from a higher position upon s.o. • **27 to back** to drive backwards

Page 456

• **4 to assemble** to come together • **13 stalking** following and watching s.o. in a frightening manner • **17 slash** slit; long, narrow cut • **21 cinematic** like a movie • **22/23 furious** very angry • **26 velocity** speed • **26/27 reverie** [ˈrevəri] daydream • **27 venom** [ˈvenəm] (fig.) hatred

© Westermann

Page 457

• **2 to descend** to go down • **3 adhesive** [ədˈhiːsɪv] substance that makes two things stick together • **5 to shave off** to remove from a surface with a sharp instrument such as a razor (*Rasierklinge*) • **6 pavement** hard surface of a road • **to settle on s.th.** (here:) to land on s.th. • **10 in pursuit** [pərˈsuːt] chasing • **14 to wow** (coll.) to impress • **15 to invoke** to call forth • **16 witchy** (coll.) like a witch (*Hexe*) • **villain** [ˈvɪlən] evil person • **17 agonizingly** (here:) extremely • **20 to surmise** to conclude, to suppose • **GPS** (abbreviation) global positioning system: system that uses satellites to determine the location of s.th./s.o. • **22 powder-blue** pale blue • **25 grid** (here:) pictures side by side and above and below • **26 kaleidoscopic** [kəˈlaɪdəˈskɑːpɪk] (here:) with many small images **28 to swoop down** to suddenly fly down

Page 458

• **2 tree canopy** (fig.) the top layer of branches and leaves • **4 tenacity** *Hartnäckigkeit* • **12 faint** slight • **28 chirpy** lively and cheerful • **alto** *Altstimme*

Page 459

• **8 to verify** to confirm • **corporeal identity** (fig.) physical presence • **13 to give in** to agree to s.o.'s wish, having previously refused • **14/15 at your command** available for instantaneous use • **16 acquiescence** [ˌækwiˈesns] unwilling acceptance • **23 span** the length of a bridge between two supports • **24 gorge** deep, narrow valley • **28 ominous** menacing, foreboding

Page 460

• **3 to hold out hope** (fig.) to still have hope • **17 to submit to s.th./s.o.** to yield or give in to s.th./s.o. • **19 to ram s.th.** to hit s.th. with force • **trajectory** flight path • **21 in sync** (here:) in the right position • **22 to bellow** to shout in a deep, loud voice • **23 entreaty** (formal) emotional request • **to render** (here:) to produce • **whine** long, high cry • **25 nasal** [ˈneɪzl] • **to emanate from somewhere** (formal) to come from somewhere • **dull black** not shiny black

Page 461

• **3 serenity** [səˈrenəti] quality of being peaceful and calm • **steering wheel** *Lenkrad* • **5 to regain** to get s.th. back again • **lock** (here:) fixed position • **12 tin** *Blech* • **14 survivor** person who still lives after a catastrophe • **22 to measure your words** to carefully consider what you want to say before acting or speaking • **23 medium** middle point • **24 raw emotion** pure emotion • **practiced** *geübt*

Point to Ponder: Compare Mercer's death with the Savage's death in **Brave New World** by Aldous Huxley.

Page 462

• **2 to pass** (euphemism) to die • **Kennedys** John F. Kennedy (1917 - 1963), US President, and his brother, Robert Kennedy (1925 - 1968) – both were assassinated • **3 to hit s.o.** (here:) to deeply affect s.o. • **4 grief** *Trauer* • **5 to arrive on schedule** (fig.) to occur at a predetermined time • **8 to leap, lept, lept on s.th.** (here:) to immediately react to s.o.'s remarks • **9 disturbed** mentally ill • **11 embrace** (here:) act of including s.o. in a community • **to reject s.th.** to refuse to accept s.th. • **20 service** (here:) religious ceremony for a burial • **23/24 to collapse** (here:) to disappear

Page 463

• **4 tangential** [tænˈdʒenʃl] (formal) not directly connected • **7 to preclude s.th.** (formal) to make s.th. impossible • **14 to get on a soapbox** (fig.) to make a speech in a public place about an issue • **14/15 unrelated to s.th.** having nothing to do with s.th. • **18 paranoia** [ˌpærəˈnɔɪə] unjustified mistrust towards other people • **19 far past gone** (coll.) a hopeless case • **22 stained-glass** with coloured pieces of glass that form an image • **24 martyr** [ˈmɑːrtər] *Märtyrer, -in* • **25 tribute** (here:) words of praise

Point to Ponder: Comment on: "People wanted to help. They *tried* to help." (line 26)

© Westermann

Page 464

• **6 apt** appropriate • **tidy** (here:) short and to the point • **7 to conjure** (fig.) to think up, to invent • **8 to empathize** to understand another person's feelings • **to embrace** *umarmen* • **13 guttural** deep in the throat • **17 appeal** quality of being **attractive** • **21 calculations** using mathematics to determine s.th. • **23 pace** (here:) rate • **28 to count for s.th.** (fig.) to be of some worth

Page 465

• **1 to content yourself with s.th./s.o.** to be satisfied with s.th./s.o. • **5/6 preciousness** [ˈpreʃəsnəs] quality of being of great value • **6 abundance** being plentiful • **13 to sew** [soʊ] *nähen* • **19 seed** (fig.) initial cause • **19 suspicion** [səˈspɪʃn] mistrust

Page 466

• **11 to radiate** to send out • **11 caretaker** person who takes care of equipment or of a building • **12 marine biologist** scientist who is an expert about life in seas, oceans, and lakes

Make up a script for a play that includes a debate between Georgia and Stenton.

• **13 to object to s.th.** to disagree with s.th., to be opposed to s.th. • **18/19 to dismiss** to fire • **20 near-native** (here:) nearly the same as the original location in nature • **20 timid** (here:) lacking determination

Page 467

• **1/2 in deference to s.th.** out of respect for s.th. • **7 anemone** [əˈneməni] sea animal that looks like a flower and sticks to hard surfaces • **bubble coral** a kind of coral, *Plerogyra sinuosa* or *Euphyllia baliensis* • **8 sponge** *Schwamm* • **9 current** movement of water • **to sway** to cause to move to and fro • **pinched** pressed together • **nook** small, secluded place • **10 honeycomb** (fig.) labyrinth • **13 tableau** [ˈtæbloʊ] artistic scene • **22 to suppress** *unterdrücken* • **28 in thrall** completely overwhelmed by s.o. or s.th.'s effect on you

Page 468

• **3 opaque** [oʊˈpeɪk] clouded, not transparent – also fig.: difficult to understand • **8 to splinter** (fig.) to break into small, thin pieces • **11 to age** to become older • **to masquerade** [ˌmæskəˈreɪd] to pretend to be s.th. you are not • **14 to pre-tape** to record ahead of time • **to perpetuate s.th.** to make s.th. continue for a long time • **24 frantic** (here:) beating uncontrollably

Page 469

• **1 to wring** [rɪŋ]**, wrung, wrung** to twist and squeeze your hands together • **5 unmapped** unchartered • **10 to capture** (here:) to suddenly acquire as an image • **14 tilt** act of bending to one side • **17 to give s.th. away** to reveal s.th. • **19 to acclimate** (AE) to get used to a new environment • **27 to throw up** to vomit

Page 470

• **4 to untangle** *entwirren* • **7 cargo** *Fracht* • **9 baggie™** (AE) small plastic bag for carrying or storing food • **9/10 country fair** *Jahrmarkt* • **11 to bump against s.th.** to hit a surface forcefully • **22 to align** [əˈlaɪn] to bring into agreement • **25 benignly** [bɪˈnaɪnli] (formal) gently, kindly

Page 471

• **1/2 proportionately bigger** matching the size of the octopus • **2 lunchbox** small plastic or metal container to contain a sandwich and other items for lunch • **3 spine** backbone • **malleable** [ˈmæliəbl] (fig.) capable of assuming various shapes • **infinitely** enormously • **adaptable** easily able to adjust to a new situation • **5 to bob** to move up and down in water • **6 to some degree** to some extent • **7 base** bottom • **13 gilded** (fig.) covered with a thin layer of gold • **18 determinedly** showing resolve, resolutely • **27 to split, split, split** to divide into parts

© Westermann

Page 472

• **1 to trace s.th.** (here:) to follow the shape or outline of s.th. • **3 ravishing** unusually attractive • **stunning** (here:) remarkable • **9 flowered** spread out like a flower • **16 to man** to make use of s.th., to operate • **forklift** *Gabelstapler* • **17 to thrash** to move about violently • **18 to whip** (here:) to make a sudden, strong movement • **22 to flee for cover** to quickly move away in an effort to seek protection from danger • **24 to spike** to achieve a new high value • **25 frenetically** frantically • **26 oblivious to s.th.** (formal) not aware of s.th. • **28 to negate s.th.** to make s.th. ineffective

Page 473

• **10 environs** [ɪnˈvaɪrənz] (formal) surroundings • **14 to chase** (here:) to drive • **15 frond** large leaf of seaweed • **16/17 commute** (here:) regular movement back and forth along a path • **18 wrapped around** put firmly around • **21 plain** (coll.): clearly • **to survey** [sərˈveɪ] to examine s.th. carefully • **22 burgundy** dark red colour • **25 not in the spirit** not reflecting the intention • **27 to recover** (here:) to return to one's original state of mind • **28 to strive, strove, striven for s.th.** to try hard to achieve s.th. • **holistic** [hoʊˈlɪstɪk] concentrating on the whole picture and not the individual parts

Page 474

• **5 hatch** opening • **marvel** s.th. that causes wonder • **6 ramp** *Rampe* • **15 to cohabitate** to live together • **17 go-ahead** (coll.) signal to begin • **18 prey** [preɪ] animal that is hunted and eaten by other animals • **20 to dart** to move rapidly in a certain direction • **21 snap** sudden, sharp, loud sound • **22/23 digestive tract** *Verdauungssystem* • **23 in rapid succession** quickly one after the other • **24 granular** consisting of small particles

Page 475

• **5 otherwise** *sonst* • **6 to dispose of s.th.** (here:) to quickly eat • **12 proceedings** the events taking place • **placidly** calmly • **13 outcome** final result • **19 give** (here:) willingness to stop s.th. • **19 to call s.th. off** (fig.) to no longer continue with s.th. • **21 savage** aggressive and violent • **25 to plunge in** to move into s.th. with force • **26 instantaneously** [ˌɪnstənˈteɪniəsli] immediately

Page 476

• **2 fate** *Schicksal* • **3 to rip s.th. off** to violently tear s.th. off • **7 in a flurry** in a sudden burst of activity • **8 to shred s.th.** to tear s.th. into small pieces • **9 snatch** act of suddenly seizing s.th. • **11 whimper** low whining sound • **21 to consume** (formal) to eat • **16 delightfully** in a manner causing pleasant feelings • **24 thrust** sudden, strong forward movement • **25 arch** *Bogen* • **to extract s.th.** to pull s.th. out

Page 477

• **1 to stab** (here:) to thrust • **3 to carpet** (fig.) to cover the surface of s.th. with s.th. • **6 unshaken** not affected emotionally • **11 to head out** to leave • **12 dazed** bewildered, in a state of shock • **20 to provide** to supply

Page 478

• **3 hygienic emergency** sudden need to clean yourself or to go to the toilet • **to kill** (coll.) (here:) to shut off • **5 minor** not very important • **clamor** noisy protest • **6 at stake** *auf dem Spiel* • **7 to teeter on the precipice** (fig.) to be close to a disaster • **9/10 to unsettle s.o.** to unnerve or disturb s.o. • **10 susceptible** [səˈseptəbl] **to s.th.** likely to be influenced by s.th. • **12/13 to pull s.th. off** (coll.) to carry s.th. out in spite of difficulties • **14 to be groomed for s.th.** (fig.) to be trained or prepared for an important task or job • **19 to trace** (here:) to follow • **20 to house** [haʊz] **s.th.** to provide a place for s.th. • **20/21 ran cool water through Stewart** allowed water to run through pipes that kept Stewart's red box cool – Stewart, the Transparent Man, the Circler who has recorded everything in his life for five years (page 205) • **25 to repulse s.o.** to produce a feeling of disgust in s.o.

Page 479

• **8 off** from • **9 baby-name site** website that provides suggestions for naming a baby • **11 unnerving** unsettling, making you feel nervous • **14 prank** trick played on s.o. as a joke • **18 in oil** painted with oil colours • **20 resemblance** similarity in appearance

© Westermann

Page 480

• **5 technically** (here:) according to regulations • **23 web** (here:) the Circle • **civil** [ˈsɪvl] civilized, humane • **24 anonymity** [ˌænəˈnɪməti] the state of being unknown to others • **25 disparate** [ˈdɪspərət] very different • **27 to channel through s.th.** to direct towards and through a certain thing

Page 481

• **13 ambassador** *Botschafter, -in* • **14 benign** [bɪˈnaɪn] kind, gentle, harmless • **23/24 cradle** (*Wiege*) **to grave** (fig.) from birth to death

Page 482

• **1 to lose a step** (fig.) to lose your mental stability • **4 guillotine** [ˈgɪləti:n] • **10 to acquiesce** [ˌækwiˈes] (formal) to accept s.th. unwillingly • **to buy in** (coll.) to accept • **21 competitor** *Konkurrent, -in* • **23 search** (here:) searching for information on the internet • **27 to bury** (here:) to hide

Points to Ponder: What recent developments in social media and on the internet confirm Ty's fears? Think of Google, Mega, Twitter, WikiLeaks, YouTube, Amazon, hacking, trolling etc.

Page 483

• **6 monetary transaction** transferring money from one account to another • **11 legislator** member of the US Senate or House of Representatives or similar state chambers • **11/12 owe their reputations to the Circle** are dependent on the Circle for their reputations • **14/15 incriminating** suggesting criminal activity • **17 that's it** (coll.) there is nothing more to be done • **18 under the guise** [gaɪz] **of s.th.** (fig.) under the pretext of s.th. (*unter dem Vorwand*) • **19 mob rule** with the masses in charge and no democratically elected government • **24 unfettered** (fig.) with no limits

Page 484

• **1 rapture** great mystical experience, ecstasy – cf. Rapture is also a concept among some Evangelicals to denote a time at the end of the world when Christians ascend to heaven to join Christ. • **3 fringe notion** idea far from the mainstream • **adjunct** associate, assistant • **6 paired with** together with • **ruthless** *rücksichtslos* • **9 to professionalize s.th.** (here:) to turn s.th. into a paid job • **13 private-sector** having to do with private, profit-making enterprises • **21 to victimize s.o.** to make s.o. a victim (*Opfer*) • **24 to pursue** [pərˈsu:] to chase • **to the ends of the earth** (fig.) expression meaning there is no limit to s.o.'s effort to achieve s.th. • **25 pivot** [ˈpɪvət] (fig.) turning point • **27 upheaval** time of violent change

Point to Ponder: Discuss the pros and cons of neoliberalism.

Page 485

• **6 to trade** *tauschen* • **19 all capitals** using only upper-case letters • **20/21 to catch s.th.** (here:) to notice and pay special attention to s.th. • **22 ceaseless** [ˈsi:sləs] (formal) never stopping • **22 pursuit** [pərˈsu:t] search • **24/25 unbreachable** (fig.) not able to be entered or broken through

Point to Ponder: Compare Ty's statement with this passage from the Declaration of Independence:

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal, that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable Rights, that among these are Life, Liberty and the pursuit of Happiness. That to secure these rights, Governments are instituted among Men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed, That whenever any Form of Government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the Right of the People to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new Government […]

Page 486

• **5 to dismantle** to take apart • **9/10 Mongolian steppe** grassy plain without trees in Mongolia • **13 mall** (AE) indoor shopping centre • **15 untethered** (fig.) not connected to anything • **18 to reminisce** [ˌremɪˈnɪs] to write or talk fondly about past experiences

© Westermann

Book III

Page 489

• **1 apocalypse** [əˈpɑːkəlɪps] (fig.) great disaster – cf. the Apocalypse in the Bible • **3 frayed** (fig.) worn down, showing the effects of strain • **4 to reach out to s.o.** to seek support from s.o. • **5 to take matters into your own hands** (fig.) to deal with s.th. yourself • **to entrust** (here:) to reveal s.th. of a sensitive nature • **9 hush** (here:) quiet sound • **9/10 respirator** machine that assists with breathing • **12 catatonic** unable to move or react • **14 prognosis** [prɑːgˈnoʊsɪs] medical opinion about how s.o. will progress • **strong** (here:) very positive • **17 to emerge from s.th.** (here:) to recover from an illness • **18 vitals** vital signs: heartbeat, blood pressure, pulse, breathing, body temperature, etc. • **to encourage s.o.** (here:) to make s.o. feel more positive about s.th.

Page 490

• **1 to flitter** to flutter • **6 ribbed** with raised lines • **8 twinge** sudden, brief feeling of discomfort • **12 annoyance** irritation • **16 knock** *Klopfen* • **to startle** to surprise • **prone** lying flat • **20 irreversible** not able to be returned to an earlier state • **21 to overstate** to exaggerate • **23 duty** *Pflicht* • **holy** *heilig* • **24 claim** *Behauptung* • **misguided** led by the wrong ideals • **25 to derail** (fig.) to obstruct, to prevent from happening

Page 491

• **1 customary** usual • **3 secluded** apart, separated from other people • **4 subterranean** [ˌsʌbtəˈreɪniən] underground • **8 wholly** [ˈhoʊlli] completely • **shame** the feeling of being ashamed • **11 perpetual** lasting forever • **13 messiness** confusion, disorder • **16 burst** *Ausbruch* • **17 workings** (here:) activity • **20 affront** insult, provocation • **deprivation** not having what is needed • **21 to bring s.th. up** to mention s.th.

Points to Ponder: Comment on: “All of that would be... would only be a memory.” – lines 10-15

The sequel **The Every**, published in 2021, is recommended.

© Westermann